

## The Rise of Nationalism in Europe

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Why did big European powers meet in Berlin in 1885?

**Ans :** [Delhi 2018]

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, merchants from the towns in Europe began moving to the countryside, supplying money to peasants and artisans, persuading them to produce for an international market.

2. Name the treaty of 1832 that recognized Greece as an independent nation.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2016]

It was the Treaty of Constantinople that recognized Greece as an independent nation.

3. Name the event that mobilized nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe in 1830-1848?

**Ans :** [Delhi 2016]

The Greek war of independence mobilized nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe in 1830-1848.

4. What was the main aim of the revolutionaries of Europe during the years following 1815? [Delhi 2016]

**Ans :**

Their main aim was to oppose the monarchical form of government and fight for liberty and freedom.

5. Who remarked "When France sneezes, the rest of Europe catches cold"? [AI 2016]

**Ans :**

"When France sneezes, the rest of Europe catches cold" was remarked by Duke Mettemich.

6. Who was proclaimed the German emperor in the ceremony held at Versailles in January 1871? [AI 2016]

**Ans :**

The ceremony held at Versailles in January 1871 proclaimed Kaiser William I of Prussia as the German emperor.

7. What was the meaning of liberalism in early 19th century in Europe? [Foreign 2016]

**Ans :**

Liberalism in early 19th century in Europe meant freedom for the individual, equality before law, government by consent and freedom of markets.

8. What was the main aim of the Treaty of Vienna of 1815?

**Ans :** [Foreign 2016]

The main aim of the Treaty of Vienna of 1815 was to

reestablish conservative regions in Europe.

9. What was the strong demand of the emerging middle classes in Europe during 19th century?

**Ans :** [Foreign 2016]

The strong demand of the emerging middle classes in Europe during 19th century was constitutionalism with national unification.

10. What was the major change that occurred in the political and constitutional scenario due to French revolution in Europe?

**Ans :** [Delhi 2015]

The major changes that occurred in the political and constitutional scenario due to French revolution in Europe were the end of the absolute monarch with the transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French people.

11. What was the main aim of the French Revolutionaries?

**Ans :** [AI 2015]

Their main aim was to transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French people by creating a sense of collective identity amongst the French people.

12. What was the major issue taken up by the liberal nationalists? [Foreign 2015]

**Ans :**

The liberal nationalists took the major issue of freedom of press.

13. Mention the proclamation of the French Revolution.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2010]

The proclamation of the French Revolution was "the people would constitute the nation and shape its destiny."

14. Who founded the secret society, 'Young Italy' during the 1830s?

**Ans :** [AI 2010]

During the 1830s, the secret society called the Young Italy was founded by Giuseppe Mazzini.

15. Name the female allegory representing the Republic of France. [AI 2010]

**Ans :**

Marianne was the female allegory representing the republic of France.

16. Name the female allegory of the German nation.

**Ans :** [AI 2010]

Germania was the female allegory of the German nation.

17. What was the result of the first upheaval that took

place in France in July 1830?

[Foreign 2010]

**Ans :**

It resulted in the overthrowing of the Bourbon kings and installation of a constitutional monarch with Louis Philippe as the head.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

18. Describe any three economic hardships faced by Europe in 1830s. [Delhi 2017]

or

'Great economic hardships in Europe prevailed in 1830's'. Support the statement with arguments.

[AI 2016]

or

Why was the decade of 1830 is known as great economic hardships in Europe? Explain any three reasons.

[AI 2013]

**Ans :**

The three economic hardships faced by Europe in 1830s were:

- High rise in population led to the unemployment condition and scarcity of jobs.
  - The small producers faced stiff competition due to the import of cheap machine goods from England.
  - Due to the burden of the feudal dues and taxes, there was bad harvest.
  - There was rise in the prices of food grains due to the bad harvest which made the condition of the common people miserable.
19. How had the female figures become an allegory of the nation during the 19th century in Europe? Analyse. [Delhi 2016]

**Ans :**

The following are the ways by which the female figures become an allegory of the nation during the 19th century in Europe:

- The artists started personifying the nation with female figures in the 18th and 19th century which was an abstract idea that gave a concrete form to the nation. Hence, the female figure became the allegory of the nation.
  - In France, the statues of Christene Marianne were erected in the public square and also marked on the coins and the stamps. It was the figure of Liberty with the red cap, the tricolor and the cockade.
  - In Germany, Germania became the allegory wearing a crown of oak leaves because the German oak symbolizes heroism.
20. Culture had played an important role in the development of nationalism in Europe during the 18th and 19th centuries. Support the statement with examples. [Foreign 2016]

or

How did nationalism develop through culture in Europe? Explain.

**Ans :**

[AI 2015]

It is true to say that culture had played an important role in the development of nationalism in Europe

during the 18th and 19th centuries. This can be justified with the following examples:

- Romanticism and cultural movements in Greece helped in developing the feeling of nationalism, sense of togetherness and love for the country through language, art, poetry, stories, folk songs, music and the past experiences.
- Karol Kurpinski was able to develop the feeling of nationalist through his operas, music and folk dances.
- The Poland people were fighting with Russia for their language and culture.

21. How did a wave of economic nationalism strengthen the wider nationalist sentiments growing in Europe? Explain. [Foreign 2015]

**Ans :**

The following are the ways through which a wave of economic nationalism strengthen the wider nationalist sentiments growing in Europe:

- The demand for the unconstrained transfer of commodities and people.
- The formation of Zollverein.
- The formation of the railway network which increased the mobility and strengthen the economic condition.

22. Describe the events of French Revolution which had influenced the people belonging to other parts of Europe.

**Ans :**

[Delhi 2015]

The events of French Revolution which had influenced the people belonging to other parts of Europe were:

- Jacobins clubs were set up by the students and the members of educated middle class after the news of the French revolution which affected the French army.
- The idea of nationalism was spread abroad by the French army.
- The napoleon code was introduced in the year 1804, which abolished privileges and upheld equality.

23. How did the local people in the areas conquered by Napoleon react to French rule? Explain.

**Ans :**

[Delhi 2014]

The local people in the areas conquered by Napoleon had a mixed reaction to French rule.

- The businessman and the small producers welcomed the economic reforms introduced by Napoleon.
- Initially, the French armies were recognized as the messenger of liberty but later on it was realised that the administrative reforms cannot go hand in hand with the political reform.
- The increased taxation and censorship were not liked by the people.

24. Explain the conditions that were viewed as obstacles to the economic exchange and growth by the new commercial classes during the 19th century in Europe.

**Ans :**

[AI 2014]

The following were the conditions that were viewed as obstacles to the economic exchange and growth by

the new commercial classes during the 19th century in Europe:

- Restrictions were put on the movement of goods, capital and the people by many states.
- There was a problem of time consuming calculations due to the different system of weights and measures in different confederations.
- There was a problem of price rise and delay in supply of goods due to so many check posts and custom duties.

**25.** What were Jacobin clubs? How did then- activities and campaigns help to spread the idea of nationalism abroad? Explain. [Foreign 2014]

**Ans :**

The political clubs in Europe formed by the educated middle class for the replacement of autocratic regimes by the democratic government called the Jacobin clubs. Their activities and campaigns helped to spread the idea of nationalism abroad in the following ways:

- The French armies were able to move into Holland, Belgium and Switzerland.
- The French armies were able to spread the ideas of nationalism in other countries of the world after the outbreak of the revolutionary wars.

**26.** Explain the process of unification of Italy.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2013, 2012]

- Giuseppe Mazzini started initiative for the unification of Italy. He formed a secret society called 'Young Italy'.
- King Victor Emmanuel II tried to unify Italian states through war.
- Further Victor Emmanuel II was supported and helped by Chief Minister Cavour and large number of armed volunteers under the leadership of Giuseppe Garibaldi.

**27.** Explain the process of unification of Germany.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2013, 2012]

- The efforts of installing a constitutional monarchy in Germany with the help of political associations were failed by the year 1848. The failure of the Frankfurt parliament clearly indicated that Germany can be unified only with the combined effort of the monarchy and the army.
- The movement of unification of Germany was led by Prussia. There the chief minister of Prussia (Otto von Bismarck) became the main architect in the process of unification of Germany.
- Three wars were fought with Austria, Denmark and France over seven years which finally ended with the Prussian victory and then after the process of unification of Germany was completed.

**28.** How had Britain come into existence? [Delhi 2013]

**Ans :**

- The formation of Britain or the unification of Britain was a result of long drawn parliamentary process. Before the 18th century there was no such nation called Britain.
- It was all comprised by the English, Welsh, Scot and Irish lived in the British Isles. All these regions had their own cultural and political traditions.

Gradually, England grew in importance due to its rising wealth and power which resulted in expansion of her influence over the other countries in that region.

- In the year 1707, the act of union between England and Scotland resulted in the formation of United Kingdom of Great Britain. Finally, the British nation had its own English culture, British flag, national anthem and English language.

**29.** Name the female allegory, which was invented by artists in the 19th century to represent the nation of France. Explain any two features of it. [Foreign 2013]

**Ans :**

In France, the name of the female allegory was Marianne. The statues of Christene Marianne were erected in the public square and also marked on the coins and the stamps.

The two features of this female allegory were:

- This reflects the ideas of the people's nation.
- It was the figure of liberty with the red cap, the tricolor and the cockade.

**30.** Describe the impact of the 'revolution of liberals' of 1848 in Europe. [Foreign 2012]

**Ans :**

The revolution of liberals of 1848 had a great impact in Europe. These were:

- The monarch was abdicated and a republic was formed on the basis of universal male suffrage in France.
- Men and women of the liberal middle classes united their demands for the constitutionalism and national unification and wanted to form a nation-state on the basis of the parliamentary principles.
- Middle class professionals, businessmen and the rich artisans went to Frankfurt city and voted for an all-German National Assembly. As a result, the Frankfurt assembly was convened and a constitution for a German nation was drafted which was headed by a monarchy subject.

**31.** Explain any three beliefs of the conservatism that emerged after 1815. [Delhi 2011]

**Ans :**

The three beliefs of the conservatism that emerged after 1815 were:

- They believed that the traditional institutions of the state and the society must be protected and preserved.
- They held the belief that the changes brought by the Napoleon and the ^modernization would definitely strengthen the power of the state and make it much more effective.
- They also believed that the modern army, efficient bureaucracy, dynamic economy and the abolition of the feudalism and serfdom would surely provide gain to the aristocratic monarchies of Europe.

**32.** Describe any three reforms introduced by Napoleon in the territories he conquered. [Delhi 2011]

**Ans :**

The three reforms introduced by Napoleon in the territories he conquered were:

- a. Napoleon introduced the Civil Code in the year 1804 which was also called as the Napoleon Code. It was introduced in order to abolish the privileges which were based on birth, to establish equality before the law and to give the right to property to all.
- b. He also introduced a system of uniform weight and measures and a system of common currency for the nation which helped the people in trade from one region to another.
- c. He had changed the system of transport and communications and made it more advanced.

**33.** Explain the contribution of Otto van Bismarck in German unification. [Delhi 2011]

**Ans :**

The movement of unification of Germany was led by Prussia. The chief minister of Prussia (Otto von Bismarck) became the main architect in the process of unification of Germany.

The process of unification of Germany was taken up by him with the help of the Prussian army and the bureaucracy. He infused the feeling of nationalism in the minds of the people. Three wars were fought with Austria, Denmark and France over seven years and defeated Austria, Denmark and France which finally ended with the Prussian victory and thus completed the process of unification of Germany.

**34.** Explain any three ways in which nationalists feelings were kept alive in Poland in the 18th and 19th century. [AI 2011]

**Ans :**

The three ways in which nationalist feelings were kept alive in Poland in the 18th and 19th century were as follows:

- a. The Polish people used their culture in maintaining and upgrading their national identity.
- b. For their unity and identity they had used music. For example, Karol Kurpinski was able to develop the feeling of nationalism through his operas, music and folk dances.
- c. They used their language as a national resistance in church gatherings and other religious instructions.

**35.** Explain any three causes of conflict in the Balkan area after 1871. [AI 2011]

**Ans :**

The three causes of conflict in the Balkan area after 1871 were:

- a. The modern day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Serbia etc. were comprised together called the Balkans. They had conflict with one another on the basis of feelings of nationalism.
- b. The different Balkan regions were jealous of each other and always for their own identity.
- c. They wanted to gain more territory at the expense of the others.

**36.** Explain the contribution of Giuseppe Mazzini in spreading revolutionary ideas in Europe. [AI 2011]

**Ans :**

Giuseppe Mazzini was a great Italian revolutionary. He was born in Genoa in the year 1807. He joined a secret society of the Carbonari. He was sent to jail in the year 1831 because he was involved in a revolution in Liguria. Two underground societies were founded under him named the Young Italy in Marseilles and Young Europe in Berne.

According to Mazzini, the God had intended the nations to be the natural units of mankind. Therefore, Italy could not continue to be a patchwork of the small and fragmented states and kingdoms.

The conservatives were frightened with the Mazzini's opposition to the monarchy system and his vision for the democracy.

**37.** Explain in three points, how Ireland was incorporated into United Kingdom in 1801. [Foreign 2011]

**Ans :**

The following are the ways through which Ireland was incorporated into United Kingdom in the year 1801:

- a. Catholics and Protestants were the two different religious followers in Ireland. The Protestants were supported by the English to establish dominance over the large Catholic country.
- b. The Catholics revolted under the leadership of Wolfe Tone against this dominance but were failed.
- c. The distinctive culture and language was suppressed when the English nation grew in power. The English nation promoted their own British flag, national anthem and English language.

**38.** Explain any three features of the 'nation-state' that emerged in Europe in the twentieth century. [Foreign 2011]

**Ans :**

The three features of the nation-state that emerged in Europe in the 20th century were:

- a. There were intense rivalry among the nations due to expansion of trade and colonies,
- b. The disintegration of the Ottoman Empire.
- c. The subject countries declared themselves as an independent countries.

**39.** Explain any three features of Napoleon Code.

**Ans :**

[Delhi 2010]

The three features of the Napoleon Code are:

- a. It helped in restoring monarchy after destroying democracy.
- b. It helped in making the administrative system more rational and efficient.
- c. It abolished the privileges based on birth and helped in gaining equality before law.

**40.** Explain any three measures introduced by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. [Delhi 2010]

**Ans :**

The three measures introduced by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people were:

- a. The idea of la patrie and le Citoyen helped the people enjoying the equal rights under a



constitution.

- b. The former royal standard flag was replaced by a new French tricolor flag.
- c. The new estate general was elected.
- d. New hymns were composed and martyrs were commemorated.
- e. The regional dialects were discouraged in France and French was declared the common language of the nation.

41. Describe in brief the process by which the 'British nation' came into existence. [Foreign 2010]

**Ans :**

The formation of Britain or the unification of Britain was a result of long drawn parliamentary process. Before the 18th century there was no such nation called Britain. It was all comprised by the English, Welsh, Scot and Irish lived in the British Isles. All these regions had their own cultural and political traditions. Gradually England grew in importance due to its rising wealth and power which resulted in expansion of her influence over the other countries in that region.

In the year 1707, the act of union between England and Scotland resulted in the formation of United Kingdom of Great Britain. Finally, the British nation had its own English culture, British flag, national anthem and English language.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

42. Describe the explosive conditions that prevailed in Balkans after 1871 in Europe. [Delhi 2018]

**Ans :**

The explosive conditions that prevailed in the Balkans after 1871 were:

- a. The modern day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Serbia etc. were comprised together called the Balkans. They had conflict with one another on the basis of feelings of nationalism.
- b. The different Balkan regions were jealous of each other and always for their own identity.
- c. They wanted to gain more territory at the expense of the others.
- d. Balkans also became the scene of big power rivalry. Each power-Russia, Germany, England were keen to take hold on Balkans.
- e. The Balkans people used history to prove that they had once been independent. So, they became nationalist and rebellious to win back their long-lost independence.

43. Analyse the measures and practices introduced by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. [Delhi 2016]

**Ans :**

The measures and practices introduced by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people were:

- a. The idea of La patrie and Le citoyen helped the people enjoying the equal rights under a

constitution.

- b. The former royal standard flag was replaced by a new French tricolor flag.
- c. The new estate general was elected.
- d. New hymns were composed and martyrs were commemorated.
- e. The regional dialects were discouraged in France and French was declared the common language of the nation.

44. Napoleon had destroyed democracy in France, but in the administrative field he had incorporated revolutionary principles in order to make the whole system more rational and efficient. Analyse the statement with arguments. [AI 2016]

or

"Napoleon had, no doubt destroyed democracy in France, but in the administrative field he had incorporated revolutionary principles in order to make the whole system more rational and efficient". Support the statement. [Delhi 2012]

**Ans :**

The five social and administrative reforms introduced by Napoleon in the regions under his control were :

- a. He gave away with all privileges based on birth, established equality before the law.
- b. He abolished the feudal system and freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues.
- c. Equid restrictions were removed in the towns.
- d. He introduced uniform and standardised weights and measures.
- e. He also introduced a common national currency that would facilitate the movement and exchange of goods and capital from one region to another.

45. 'Nationalism no longer retained its idealistic liberal democratic sentiments by the last quarter of the 19th century in Europe.' Analyse the statement with examples. [Foreign 2016]

**Ans :**

It is true to say that Nationalism no longer retained its idealistic liberal democratic sentiments by the last quarter of the 19th century in Europe. It was so due to the following reasons:

- a. Nationalism started becoming narrower in belief with inadequate ends.
- b. Now the concept of nationalism was changing in its meaning as more area of influence.
- c. The nationalists were manipulated by the chief European authorities.
- d. The problem of Balkan state was not solved rather it was being watched by the countries to become fruitful for them.

46. Describe the process of unification of Germany.

**Ans :**

[Delhi 2015]

In 1848, Germans tried to unite the different regions of the German confederation into a nation-state-governed by an elected parliament. But the monarchy and the military repulsed the initiative. From then, Germany's effort was supported by the large land owners called Junkers of Prussia. Prussia took the leadership of this movement under its chief minister, Otto von Bismarck. He took the help of Prussian army

and bureaucracy. For 7 years, Prussians fought 3 wars with Austria, Denmark, and France-which resulted into Prussia's victory and it led to be unification of Germany.

The Prussian king, William I was proclaimed as the German Emperor on January 18, 1871. The nation-state building in Germany had demonstrated the dominance of Prussian state power. The unified state of Germany had modern currency, banking, legal and judicial system.

47. "Nationalism spreads when people begin to believe that they are all part of the same nation." Support the statement. [Delhi 2015]

**Ans :**

Nationalism spreads when people begin to believe that they are all part of the same nation.

- The Romanticism and cultural movements focused on emotions, intuitions and mystical feelings to create a sense of a shared collective heritage, a common cultural past of a nation.
- Folk songs, folk poetry and folk dances are true cultural spirits of a nation and these are essential to bind the people in a bond.
- Importance of vernacular language also bind the people into a nation so that they can collectively think for their nation.
- Music also helps in to light up the feeling of nationalism-connection to one nation.
- The collection of local folklore was not just only to recover the national spirit, but also spread the message of nationalism among the illiterate people.

48. Describe the process of unification of Italy. [AI 2015]

**Ans :**

- Earlier Italy was divided into seven states out of which the Italian princely house ruled only in the Sardinia-Piedmont region.
- The youth of the country were greatly influenced by the most prominent Italian leader named Mazzini. The youth were inspired for the establishment of a single united Italy. Secret societies were set up in many states.
- In the process of unification of Italy Cavour was helped a lot by Mazzini. King Victor Emmanuel II took the charge of the unification of Italy after a series of failure of Mazzini.
- Cavour, the then chief minister due to his tactful diplomatic alliance with France was able to defeat the Austrian forces in the year 1859.
- Finally the Spanish were driven out when Giuseppe Garibaldi marched into south Italy in the year 1860 with the support of the local peasants. Hence, Italy was unified in the year 1961 and Victor Emmanuel II was declared the king of united Italy.

49. Describe the process of unification of Britain.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2015]

The unification of Britain was not the result of any revolution but it was a long drawn-out process. Earlier, Britain was comprised of English, Welsh, Scot or Irish. But in all these, English nations grew in importance

and power so was able to dominate over other nations of Britain. The English parliament came into power in 1688 with England at its centre.

- The Act of Union (1707) between England and Scotland resulted in formation of the United Kingdom of Great Britain'. This means England was able to dominate Scotland.
- Ireland was divided into Catholic and Protestants. The English helped the Protestants to gain control over Catholic country. Catholic revolted against British but they were suppressed and Ireland was forcibly incorporated into the United Kingdom in 1801. A new British nation' came through the propagation of English culture, the British flag (Union Jack), the national anthem (God Save Our Noble King), and the English language.

50. 'The 1830s were years of great economic hardship in Europe.' Support the statement with four examples.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2012]

The decade of 1830s known as great economic hardships in Europe because of the following reasons:

- High rise in population led to the unemployment condition and scarcity of jobs.
- The small producers faced stiff competition due to the import of cheap machine goods from England.
- Due to the burden of the feudal dues and taxes there was bad harvest.
- There was rise in the prices of food grains due to the bad harvest which made the condition of the common people miserable.

51. Explain any four ideas of liberal nationalists in the economic sphere. [AI 2011]

**Ans :**

The four ideas of liberal nationalists in the economic sphere were:

- They demanded the freedom of markets and restrictions to be abolished which were imposed by the state.
- They were in demand for the creation of the unified economic territory.
- They wanted the currency disparities to be balanced.
- They wanted to follow the uniform weights and measurement.
- They demanded good infrastructure for their economic interests.

52. Explain any four changes brought about in Europe by the Treaty of Vienna [1815]. [Foreign 2011]

**Ans :**

The four changes that were brought in Europe by the Treaty of Vienna in the year ;1815 were as follows:

- The Bourbon dynasty was restored.
- Series of states were set up along the boundaries of France for the future prevention.
- Prussia was given the new territories on to the west side.
- The German federation remained as it is.
- Monarchy was restored in Europe.

## Nationalism in India

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Name the writer of the novel Anandamath.  
**Ans :** [Delhi 2017]  
Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay is the writer of the novel Anandamath.
2. Name the writer of the book 'Hind Swaraj'.  
**Ans :** [All India 2017]  
Mahatma Gandhi is the writer of the book Hind Swaraj.
3. Who wrote the song 'Vande Mataram'?  
**Ans :** [Foreign 2017]  
The song 'Vande Mataram' was written by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay.
4. State the slogan with which Simon Commission was greeted in 1928 in India.  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
Simon Commission arrived in India and was greeted with the slogan 'Simon go back'.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

5. Why did Gandhiji decide to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act 1919. Explain any three reasons.  
**Ans :** [All India 2010, 2014, Delhi 2015, 2017]  
Gandhiji decided to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act, 1919 due to the following three reasons:
  - a. The Rowlatt Act was passed hurriedly by the Imperial Legislative Council despite the opposition by the Indian members.
  - b. The Rowlatt Act gave enormous power to the government for repressing the political activities.
  - c. According to this Act, the government can detain the political prisoners without trial for a period of two years.
6. Evaluate the contribution of folklore, songs, popular prints etc. in shaping the nationalism during freedom struggle.  
**Ans :** [Delhi 2017]
  - a. Folklores, folk songs, prints, icons and symbols etc. helped in unifying the Indians and inspired a feeling of nationalism in them. The image of India was first visualized as Bharat Mata by Bankim

- Chandra Chattopadhyay and also a hymn 'Vande Mataram' was written by him in 1870s. This hymn was later included in his novel Anandamath and sung during the swadeshi movement in Bengal.
- b. The image of Bharat Mata was portrayed as calm, composed, divine and spiritual which acquired different forms in different years by different artists. This image of India developed the ideas of nationalism in India.
  - c. The Indian folklores were revived and the folk tales were recorded and sung by bards which gave a true picture of the traditional Indian culture and tells how it was ruined by the Britishers.
  - d. Rabindranath Tagore led the movement for the revival of the folks and thus collected ballads, nursery rhymes and myths. Tamil folk tales were published by Natesa Shashtri in his book The folklore of southern India which was a massive four volume collection.
  - e. A tricolor swadeshi flag, using red, green and yellow was designed during the swadeshi movement in Bengal which had 8 lotuses for the representation of the 8 provinces and a crescent moon for symbolizing the Hindus and the Muslims. A tricolor Swaraj flag was designed by Gandhiji in the year 1921 using the colours red, green and white. A spinning wheel was in the centre of the flag which represented the Gandhian ideal of self-help.

7. Why did Gandhiji decide to withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement in February 1922? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2015, All India 2017]

Gandhiji decided to withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement in February 1922 due to the following three reasons:

- a. The Non-Cooperation Movement was turning violent in many places.
  - b. To train the Satyagrahis for mass struggle, (c) Some of the Congress leaders were not willing to continue the non-cooperation because they were tired of the mass struggle, wanted to participate in the council elections and they wanted to criticize the British policies within the council.
8. Why did Gandhiji relaunch the Civil Disobedience Movement after the Second Round Table Conference? Explain any three reasons. [Foreign 2013, 2017]

**Ans :**

Gandhiji relaunched the Civil Disobedience Movement after the Second Round Table Conference due to the following reasons:

- a. When Mahatma Gandhi went for the Round Table Conference in December 1931, he returned disappointed as the negotiations were broken down.
  - b. He discovered this new cycle of repression by the British.
  - c. The important Congress leaders were in jail and meetings, demonstrations and boycotts were prevented.
9. How did the 'Salt March' become the base to begin the 'Civil Disobedience Movement'? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2017]

The 'Salt March' became the base to begin the 'Civil Disobedience Movement' because on 31st March 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating eleven demands out of which some were of general interest and some of were specific demands of different classes. The demands were wide ranging in order to bring together everyone under a united campaign. The most important demand was to abolish the salt tax as it was the most important item in food that is consumed by both rich and poor.

10. Who had designed the 'Swaraj flag' by 1921? Explain the main features of the 'Swaraj flag'.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2016]

A tricolor Swaraj flag was designed by Gandhiji in the year 1921.

The main features of this Swaraj flag was:

- a. It was designed using the colours red, green and white.
  - b. A spinning wheel was in the centre of the flag which represented the Gandhi an ideal of self-help.
11. 'The Civil Disobedience Movement was different from the Non-Cooperation Movement.' Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2016]

The Civil Disobedience Movement was different from the Non-Cooperation Movement in the following ways:

- a. The Civil Disobedience Movement dealt with the breaking of the colonial laws whereas the Non-Cooperation Movement did not follow the rules of the colonial government.
- b. In the Civil Disobedience Movement, people broke the salt law and forest law whereas in the Non-Cooperation Movement, they carried out peaceful demonstrations.
- c. The Civil Disobedience Movement was launched to get Purna Swaraj whereas the Non-Cooperation Movement was to unite the Hindus and Muslims to attain Swaraj.

12. What type of flag was designed during the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal? Explain its main features.

**Ans :** [All India 2016]

- a. A tricolor swadeshi flag, using red, green and yellow was designed during the swadeshi movement in Bengal.
- b. It had 8 lotuses for the representation of the 8 provinces,
- c. It had a crescent moon for symbolizing the Hindus

and the Muslims.

13. The plantation workers in Assam had their own understanding of Mahatma Gandhi and the notion of Swaraj.' Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** [All India 2016]

According to the Inland Emigration Act 1859, the plantation workers in Assam were not allowed to leave the tea garden. Therefore, they also joined the Swaraj movement. For the plantation workers in Assam, the notion of Swaraj was to get the right of free movement in and out of the confined space, retaining a link with the village from which they belong to and also they believed that in the Gandhi Raj they would be given land.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

14. Why did different social groups join the Civil Disobedience movement? Explain.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2016]

The following were the different social groups who participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement with different objectives:

- a. These rich peasants due to the trade depression, falling prices and disappeared cash income were not able to pay the revenue and also the government refused to reduce the revenue. Their notion for Swaraj struggle was basically a struggle against high revenue.
  - b. For the poor peasantry groups, the meaning of Swaraj was lowering the revenue demand and also they wanted the unpaid rent to be remitted.
  - c. Women also participated in large scale in the civil disobedience movement during the salt march by Gandhiji. They belonged to the high caste families from the urban areas and rich peasant households from the rural areas. For them it was a sacred duty to serve the nation.
15. Simon Commission was greeted with slogan 'Go Back Simon' on arrival in India. Support this reaction of Indians with arguments.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2016]

Against the situation of countryside turmoil, the Tory government in Britain set up a commission named Simon Commission after the name of Sir John Simon to look into the constitutional system in India and suggest the changes needed. There were no Indian members in this commission.

In the year 1928, Simon Commission arrived in India and was greeted with the slogan 'Simon go back'.

16. "The Congress was reluctant to include the demands



of the industrial workers in its programme of struggle.” Analyse the reasons.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2015]

Some of the industrial workers who participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement were the Nagpur industrial workers who selectively adopted some of the Gandhian ideas such as boycott of the foreign goods. They participated in the movement as part of their own movement against the low wages and the poor working conditions in the industries.

In the year 1930 and 1932, the railway workers and the dockworkers went on strike. The Chhotanagpur tin mines workers also protested in rallies wearing Gandhian caps and boycotted the campaigns.

But the Congress was not willing to include their demands because he thought that this would alienate the industrialists and divide the anti-imperialist forces.

17. Explain any three reasons for the slow down of Non-Cooperation Movement in cities. [All India 2013]

or

Why did the Non-Cooperation Movement gradually slowdown in cities? Explain.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2012, 2015, Foreign 2014]

The Non-Cooperation Movement gradually slowed down in towns and cities because

- The khadi clothes were expensive which the poor people could not afford.
- There was need for Indian institutions for the teachers, students and the lawyers but these were very slow to come up.
- Thus once again people started using the mill made British clothes and the students, teachers and the lawyers joined back their respective institutions.

18. Describe the main features of Poona Pact.

**Ans :** [All India 2015]

In the Second Round Table Conference, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar demanded separate electorates for the Dalits. Against this Gandhiji, began a fast unto death because he believed that separate electorates for the Dalits would slow down the process of national integration.

Later on, Ambedkar accepted Gandhian view and in the Poona Pact the depressed class people were given the reserved seats in the provincial and the central legislative council election but to be voted in by the general electorate.

19. How did Salt March become an effective tool of resistance against colonialism? Explain. [AI 2015]

or

Why did Mahatma Gandhi find in ‘salt’ a powerful symbol that could unite the nation? Explain.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2016]

Salt March become an effective tool of resistance against colonialism because on 31st March 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin. Mahatma Gandhi had stated eleven demands in this letter out of which some were of general interest and some were specific demands of different classes.

The demands were wide ranging in order to bring together everyone under a united campaign. The most important demand was to abolish the salt tax as it was the most important item in food that is consumed by both rich and poor.

20. Describe the spread of Non-Cooperation movement in the countryside. [All India 2015]

or

How did the non-cooperation spread to the countryside? Explain.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2010]

Due to the worldwide economic depression the agricultural prices began to fall, demands for agricultural goods fell and the export declined. This resulted in a countryside turmoil. Now it was difficult for the peasants to sell their harvest and pay the high revenue.

Against this situation of countryside turmoil the Tory government in Britain set up a commission named Simon Commission under Sir John Simon to look into the constitutional system in India and suggest the changes needed. There were no Indian members in this commission.

21. Describe any three major problems faced by the peasants of Awadh in the days of Non-Cooperation movement. [All India 2015]

or

Explain any three problems faced by the peasants of Awadh.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2011]

The three major problems faced by the peasants of Awadh in the days of Non-Cooperation Movement were:

- They demanded very high rents and other cesses from the peasants.
- The peasants were bound to work at landlord's farm without any payment.
- Peasants had to do begar, no security of tenure and also they were evicted regularly so that they could not acquire right over the leased land.

22. How could Non-Cooperation become a movement? Give your opinion.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2015]

In the year 1909 Mahatma Gandhi wrote a book named ‘Hind Swaraj’ in which he wrote that the British survived in India only because of the cooperation of the Indians otherwise they would have collapsed within a year.

Gandhiji planned to unfold the movement in stages. In the first stage the people surrendered the titles, boycotted civil services, army, police, schools, foreign goods, courts and legislative councils.

The full Civil Disobedience campaign was planned for the second phase if the government tried to suppress the first phase.

23. Explain the circumstances which compelled Mahatma Gandhi to call off the Non-Cooperation Movement in 1930. [All India 2012]

or

Explain the circumstances under which Gandhiji decided to call off the Civil Disobedience Movement in 1931.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2015]

The circumstances which compelled Mahatma Gandhi to call off the Non- Cooperation Movement in 1930 were:

- The Non-Cooperation Movement was turning violent in many places.
- To train the Satyagrahis for mass struggle,
- Some of the Congress leaders were not willing to continue the non-cooperation because they were tired of the mass struggle, wanted to participate in the council elections and they wanted to criticize the British policies within the council.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

24. How did women participate in the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2015]

Women participated in large scale in the Civil Disobedience Movement during the Salt March by Gandhiji. They belonged to the high caste families from the urban areas and rich peasant households from the rural areas. For them it was a sacred duty to serve the nation.

25. Why did Gandhiji decide to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act of 1919? How was it organized? [Delhi 2016]

**Ans :**

Gandhiji decided to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act 1919 due to the following three reasons:

- In the year 1919, Gandhiji organized a Satyagraha against the Rowlatt Act which was passed hurriedly by the imperial legislative council despite the opposition by the Indian members.
- The Rowlatt Act gave enormous power to the government for repressing the political activities.
- According to this act the government can detain the political prisoners without trial for a period of two years.

26. Why did Mahatma Gandhi decide to call off the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

**Ans :** [All India 2016]

The circumstances under which Gandhiji decided to call off the Civil Disobedience movement in 1931 were:

- The Non-Cooperation Movement was turning violent in many places.
- To train the Satyagrahis for mass struggle,

- Some of the Congress leaders were notwilling to continue the non-cooperation because they were tired of the mass struggle, wanted to participate in the council elections and they wanted to criticize the British policies within the council.

27. Why did Mahatma Gandhi relaunch the Civil Disobedience Movement with great apprehension? Explain.

**Ans :** [All India 2016]

Gandhiji relaunched the Civil Disobedience Movement after the Second Round Table Conference due to the following reasons: When Mahatma Gandhi went for the round table conference in December 1931, he returned disappointed as the negotiations broke down. He discovered a new cycle of repression by the British. The important Congress leaders were in jail and meetings, demonstrations and boycotts were prevented.

28. How did Non-Cooperation Movement spread to the countryside? Explain any four points. [Delhi 2012]  
or

How did civil disobedience come into force in various parts of the country? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** [All India 2016]

Due to the worldwide economic depression the agricultural prices began to fall, demands for agricultural goods fell and the export declined. This resulted in a countryside turmoil because now it was difficult for the peasants to sell their harvest and pay the high revenue. Against this situation of countryside turmoil the Tory government in Britain set up a commission named Simon Commission after the name of Sir John Simon to look into the constitutional system in India and suggest the changes needed. There were no Indian members in this commission.

29. Explain the idea of Satyagraha according to Gandhiji.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2014]

The idea of Satyagraha according to Gandhiji was a novel method of mass agitation which emphasizes the power of truth and the need to search for the truth.

Mahatma Gandhi said that if you are fighting for the truth and against injustice then there is no need of physical force to defeat the oppressor. This can be possible without being aggressive. The oppressors can be persuaded to see the truth with the use of non-violence.

Mahatma Gandhi had a hard belief that the dharma of non-violence will help in uniting the people of the country.

30. Why was Congress reluctant to allow women to hold any position of authority within the organisation? How did women participate in Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

Women also participated in large scale in the Civil Disobedience Movement during the salt march by Gandhiji. They belonged to the high caste families from the urban areas and rich peasant households from the rural areas. For them it was a sacred duty to

serve the nation. But the Congress was not willing to give them any position of authority in the organisation and that's why Gandhiji said that women should look after the domestic chores and be good mothers and wives.

31. Plantation workers had their own understanding of Mahatma Gandhi's ideas and the notion of 'Swaraj', Support the statement.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2017]

According to the Inland Emigration Act 1859, the plantation workers in Assam were not allowed to leave the tea garden. Therefore they also joined the Swaraj movement. For the plantation workers in Assam the notion of Swaraj was to get the right of free movement in and out of the confined space, retaining a link with the village from which they belong to and also they believed that in the Gandhi Raj they would be given land.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

32. How did the colonial government repress the 'Civil Disobedience Movement'? Explain.

**Ans :** [All India 2017]

The three measures taken by the British administration to repress the movement started against the Rowlatt Act were:

- a. To suppress the nationalists the British administration picked up the local leaders and barred Gandhiji from entering Delhi.
- b. Martial law was imposed.
- c. The Satyagrahis were forced to rub their nose on the ground, crawl on streets and do salute to all the Sahibs, people were beaten up and villages were bombed.

33. Explain any three measures taken by the British administration to repress the movement started against the Rowlatt act. [All India 2013]

or

Describe any three suppressive measures taken by the British administration to clamp down on nationalists.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2014]

The three suppressive measures taken by the British administration to clamp down on nationalist were:

- a. To suppress the nationalist the British administration picked up the local leaders and barred Gandhiji from entering Delhi.
- b. Martial law was imposed.
- c. The Satyagrahis were forced to rub their nose on the ground, crawl on streets and do salute to all the Sahibs. People were beaten up and villages were bombed.

34. Describe the main features of the 'Salt March'.

**Ans :** [All India 2014]

The main features of the 'Salt March' are:

- a. On 31st March 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating eleven demands out of which some were of general interest and some were specific demands of different classes.
- b. The demands were wide ranging in order to bring together everyone under a united campaign. The most important demand was to abolish the salt tax as it was the most important item in food that is consumed by both rich and poor.
- c. Mahatma Gandhi started the March for over 240 miles with his 78 trusted volunteers from Sabarmati to Dandi. They walked for 10 miles a day for 24 days. He violated the salt law by manufacturing salt by boiling the sea water on 6th April 1930.
- d. Now Gandhiji wanted Indians to refuse All sort of cooperation with the British and also break the colonial rules.

35. How had the First World War created a New economic situation in India? Explain with three examples.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2013]

The First World War created a new economic situation in India. The three examples are:

- a. The defence expenditure was financed by the war loans. The increased taxes, raising the custom duties and introducing the income tax, and increased prices of the commodities caused economic hardship for the common people.
- b. For the continuous supply of the soldiers the villages were called upon and recruitment was done forcefully.
- c. There was a period of crop failure in many parts of the country which caused acute food shortages and millions of people perished due to the famine and the epidemics.

36. How was Rowlatt Act opposed by the people in India? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2013]

Rowlatt Act opposed by the people in India. The three examples are:

- a. A non-violent Civil Disobedience was planned against this act which would start with a strike on 6th April 1919.
- b. Against the Rowlatt Act, rallies were organized, the railway workshop workers went on strike and the shops were closed down.
- c. On 13th April 1919, huge crowd was gathered in the Jallianwalla Bagh.

37. "Nationalism spreads when people begin to believe that they are all part of the same nation." Justify the statement.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2013]

It is true to say that 'Nationalism spreads when people begin to believe that they are all part of the same nation.'

Nationalism is a belief that all are a part of the same nation which binds the people together and make

different communities, regions and language groups united.

This came through the united struggles like the Non-Cooperation Movement, Civil Disobedience Movement, the war like revolt of 1857. History, fiction, folklores, folk songs, prints, icons, symbols, etc. all these helped in unifying the Indians and inspired a feeling of nationalism in them. The history was reinterpreted to create the feeling of nationalism and instill a sense of pride among the Indians. Through this the perspective of British towards India as backward, primitive and incapable of governing themselves was criticized.

38. Which were the two types of demands mentioned by Gandhiji in his letter to Viceroy Irwin on 31st January 1930? Why was the abolition of 'Salt Tax' most stirring demand? Explain.

**Ans :** [All India 2013]

On 31st March 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin. Mahatma Gandhi had stated eleven demands in this letter out of which some were of general interest and some were specific demands of different classes. The demands were wide ranging in order to bring together everyone under a united campaign.

The abolition of 'Salt Tax' was most stirring demand because salt was the most important item in food that is consumed by both rich and poor.

39. Explain the effects of 'worldwide economic depression' on India, towards late 1920s.

**Ans :** [All India 2013]

The effects of 'worldwide economic depression' on India, towards late 1920s were:

- The defence expenditure was financed by the war loans. The increased taxes, raising the custom duties and introducing the income tax, and increased prices of the commodities caused economic hardship for the common people.
  - For the continuous supply of the soldiers the villages were called upon and recruitment was done forcefully.
  - There was a period of crop failure in many parts of the country which caused acute food shortages and millions of people perished due to the famine and the epidemics.
40. How did the people support the Civil Disobedience Movement as it spread in different parts of the country? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2013]

The people supported the Civil Disobedience Movement as it spread in different parts of the country due to the following reasons:

- Due to the worldwide economic depression the agricultural prices began to fall, demands for agricultural goods fell and the export declined.
- This resulted in a countryside turmoil because now it was difficult for the peasants to sell their harvest and pay the high revenue.
- Against this situation of countryside turmoil the Tory government in Britain set up a commission

named Simon Commission after the name of Sir John Simon to look into the constitutional system in India and suggest the changes needed. There were no Indian members in this commission.

41. How did colonial government react as the Civil Disobedience Movement spread in the country? Explain any three points.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2013]

The following are the ways in which the Colonial government reacted as the Civil Disobedience movement spread in the country.

- To suppress the nationalist the British administration picked up the local leaders and barred Gandhiji from entering Delhi.
- Martial law was imposed.
- The Satyagrahis were forced to rub their nose on the ground, crawl on streets and do salute to all the Sahibs, people were beaten up and villages were bombed.

42. How was history re-interpreted in creating a feeling of nationalism? Explain with examples. [Foreign 2012]

**Ans :**

The history was reinterpreted to create the feeling of nationalism and instill a sense of pride among the Indians. Through this the perspective of British towards India as backward, primitive and incapable of governing themselves was criticized.

The reinterpretation of the Indian history revealed that India had a glorious achievements and developments in the past. India had contributed in the field of art, architecture, science, religion, culture, law, philosophy, crafts and trade.

43. Explain any three facts about the new economic situation created in India by the First World War.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2011]

Three facts about the new economic situation created in India by the First World War were:

- The defence expenditure was financed by the war loans, the increased taxes, raising the custom duties and introducing the income tax and increased prices of the commodities which caused economic hardship for the common people.
- For the continuous supply of the soldiers the villages were called upon and recruitment was done forcefully.
- There was a period of crop failure in many parts of the country which caused acute food shortages and millions of people perished due to the famine and the epidemics.

44. Explain the role of women in the Civil Disobedience Movement.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2012]

Women also participated in large scale in the Civil Disobedience movement during the salt march by Gandhiji. They belonged to the high caste families from the urban areas and rich peasant households from the rural areas. For them it was a sacred duty to serve the nation. But the Congress was not willing to give them any position of authority in the organisation and that's why Gandhiji said that women should look



after the domestic chores and be good mothers and wives.

45. Explain the effects of Non-Cooperation Movement on the economic front.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2014 Foreign 2013]

The three effects of the Non-Cooperation Movement on the economy of India were:

- Foreign goods boycotted, liquor shops picketed, foreign clothes were burnt.
- Import of the foreign clothes reduced by half, the value of import dropped, merchants and traders refused the trade of foreign goods.
- Production of Indian mills and handloom rose.

46. Explain any three reasons for the lukewarm response of some Muslim Organisations to the Civil Disobedience Movement.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2011]

The three reasons for the lukewarm response of some Muslim Organisations to the Civil Disobedience Movement were:

- Due to the decline of the non-cooperation Khilafat movement.
- They felt alienated from Congress. They felt that Congress is linked with a Hindu Mahasabha and their propagandas are Hindu oriented. This thinking resulted to Hindu-Muslim communal clashes and riots in different parts of the country. Thus the distance between these two communities widened. Their main issue was over the representation in the future assemblies.
- In the All Parties Conference in 1928, the demands of Muhammad Ali Jinnah, for reserved seats in the central assembly and representation in proportion to population in the Muslim dominated provinces like Bengal and Punjab, was strongly opposed by M.R.Jayakar of Hindu Mahasabha. The Muslims were very much concerned about their status, culture and identity as a minority in India.

47. Explain any three effects of the Non- Cooperation Movement on the economy of India. [All India 2011]  
or

Describe briefly any three economic effects of Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2009]

The three effects of the Non-Cooperation Movement on the economy of India were:

- Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops were picketed, foreign clothes were burnt.
- Import of the foreign clothes reduced by half, the value of import dropped, merchants and traders refused the trade of foreign goods.
- Production of Indian mills and handloom rose.

48. Why did the industrialists participate in the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :** [All India 2011]

The three reasons due to which the industrialists participated in the movement were:

- The Indian merchants and the industrialist became rich and powerful due to huge profits they made during the First World War.

- Thus they started opposing the colonial policies which restricted their business to expand. They had two demands - protection against the import of foreign goods and a favorable exchange ratio of rupee and sterling.
- According to the merchants and the industrialists the meaning of Swaraj was expansion of trade and business without restrictions by the colonial government. But they were disheartened due to the failure of the round table conference.

49. How did Gandhiji try to integrate the depressed classes into society? Explain any three points.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2011]

Gandhiji tried to integrate the depressed classes into society because:

- Gandhiji was of the view that Swaraj would not come for hundred years if the problem of untouchability has not removed from the country. Gandhiji called them harijan' means the children of God.
- Gandhiji fought for their temple entry rights and others rights such as access to public wells, schools and other public places. Gandhiji himself cleaned the toilets in order to dignify the work of the sweepers and also urged the upper caste people to change their heart and thinking about these untouchables.
- In the Poona Pact, the depressed class people were given the reserved seats in the provincial and the central legislative council election but to be voted in by the general electorate.

50. How did BR Ambedkar try to improve the conditions of the depressed classes? Explain any three points.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2011]

BR Ambedkar tried to improve the conditions of the depressed classes in the ' following ways:

- The Dalit leaders demanded reserved seats in the educational institutions and separate electorates so that would be getting seats in the legislative councils and thus politically empowered. The Dalits believed that these are the only ways through which they will be treated equally in the society.
- In the second Round Table Conference Dr. B.R. Ambedkar demanded separate electorates for the Dalits.
- Later on, Ambedkar accepted Gandhian view and in the Poona pact the depressed class people were given the reserved seats in the provincial and the central legislative council election but to be voted in by the general electorate.

51. Explain four points of Gandhiji's idea of Satyagraha.

**Ans :** [All India 2012]

The idea of Satyagraha according to Gandhiji was a novel method of mass agitation which emphasizes the power of truth and the need to search for the truth. Mahatma Gandhi said that if you are fighting for the truth and against injustice then there is no need of physical force to defeat the oppressor.

This can be possible without being aggressive.

The oppressors can be persuaded to see the truth with the use of non-violence.

Mahatma Gandhi had a hard belief that the dharma of non-violence will help in uniting the people of the country.

52. Why did the rich peasants take part in the Civil Disobedience Movement? Give four reasons.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2012]

The rich peasant communities of Gujarat (Patidars) and Uttar Pradesh (Jats) participated actively in the relaunched Civil Disobedience movement but they were highly disappointed when Gandhiji called off the movement without revising the revenue rates.

These rich peasants were the main producers of the commercial crops. Due to the trade depression, falling prices and disappeared cash income they were not able to pay the revenue and also the government refused to reduce the revenue. Their notion for Swaraj struggle was basically a struggle against high revenue paid to the government.

53. Explain any three causes that led the tribals to revolt in the Gudum Hills of Andhra Pradesh.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2011]

The three causes that led the tribals to revolt in the Gudum hills of Andhra Pradesh were:

- The colonial government closed large forest areas and prevented the people from entering the forest for the purposes like grazing the cattle, collection of fuelwood and fruits.
- The livelihood and the traditional rights of the local people were denied.
- The revolt began when the government forced the hill people to contribute Begar for the road building.

54. "A Satyagrahi wins the battle through non-violence." Explain with examples.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2010]

"A Satyagrahi wins the battle through non-violence." Three examples of this statement are:

- In the year 1916, Champaran Satyagraha (in Bihar) was organized to inspire the peasants to fight against the oppressive domination of the plantation system.
- In the year 1917, Kheda Satyagraha was organized in Gujarat. Due to the crop failure and a plague epidemic the peasants were not able to pay the revenue. So they were demanding for the revenue collection to be relaxed.
- In the year 1918, a Satyagraha was organized for the cotton mill workers in Ahmedabad in Gujarat.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

55. Evaluate the role of business classes in the 'Civil Disobedience Movement.'? [All India 2017]

or

Describe the role of merchants and the industrialists in the 'Civil Disobedience Movement'. [Foreign 2014]

or

Analyse the role of merchants and industrialists in the Civil Disobedience Movement. [Delhi 2010]

or

Explain the reasons for the business class to participate in the 'Civil Disobedience Movement'. [CBSE 2017]

or

Explain the attitude of the Indian merchants and the industrialists towards the 'Civil Disobedience Movement'. [All India 2015]

or

Explain with examples the role of industrialists in the freedom struggle of India. [Delhi 2014]

or

How did the industrialist relate to the Civil Disobedience Movement? Analyse their role.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2015]

The Indian merchants and the industrialist became rich and powerful due to huge profits they made during the First World War. Thus they started opposing the colonial policies which restricted their business to expand. They had two demands — protection against the import of foreign goods and a favourable exchange ratio of rupee and sterling. In the year 1920 and 1927, Indian Industrial and Commercial Congress and the Federation of the Indian Chamber of Commerce and Industries were formed respectively by the Indian merchants and industrialist to organize their business interest.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

Purshottamdas Thakurdas and G.D. Birla were the prominent industrialist who supported the Civil Disobedience Movement, given financial assistance, refused to buy and sell the foreign goods and attacked the colonial control. According to the merchants and the industrialists, the meaning of Swaraj was expansion of trade and business without restrictions by the colonial government. But they were disheartened due to the failure of the Round Table Conference.

56. How did Non-Cooperation Movement start with participation of middle class people in the cities? Explain its impact on the economic front. [Delhi 2018]

**Ans :**

- In January 1921, the non-cooperation Khilafat movement was started in which different social groups participated with different aspirations from the Swaraj. This movement was started with the middle class people of the towns and cities. The students left the schools and colleges, the teachers and headmasters resigned and the lawyers gave up their practices.
- The council elections were also boycotted except

in Madras. The Justice Party which was a party of the non-Brahmins in Madras felt that power can be acquired only through the council elections.

- c. The economic effects of the Non-Cooperation Movement — foreign goods boycotted, liquor shops picketed, foreign clothes were burnt, import of the foreign clothes became half, the value of import dropped, merchants and traders refused the trade of foreign goods, production of Indian mills and handloom rose.

57. Explain the importance of the 'Salt March' of Gandhiji as a symbol to unite the nation.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2017]

On 31st March 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin. Mahatma Gandhi had stated eleven demands in this letter out of which some were of general interest and some were specific demands of different classes. The demands were wide ranging in order to bring together everyone under a united campaign. The most important demand was to abolish the salt tax as it was the most important item in food that is consumed by both rich and poor.

Mahatma Gandhi started the march for over 240 miles with his 78 trusted volunteers from Sabarmati to Dandi. They walked for 10 miles a day for 24 days. He violated the salt law by manufacturing salt by boiling the sea water on 6th April 1930. Now Gandhiji wanted Indians to refuse all sort of cooperation with the British and also break the colonial rules. There after, people broke salt law, manufactured salt, showed demonstrations, boycotted the foreign clothes, picketed the liquor shops, peasants refused to pay the taxes and revenues and the forest people violated the forest laws.

58. Some of the political organisations in India were lukewarm in their response to 'Civil Disobedience Movement'. Examine the statement.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2013]

It is true to say that some of the political organisations in India were lukewarm in their response to 'Civil Disobedience Movement'.

- a. Some of the Congress leaders were not willing to continue the non-cooperation because they were tired of the mass struggle, wanted to participate in the council elections and criticize the British policies within the council.
- b. The Swaraj party was formed within the Congress party by C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru. It was formed with the purpose to argue for return to council elections.
- c. The Muslims and their political organisations were also not taking much interest in the Civil Disobedience Movement due to the decline of the Non-Cooperation Khilafat Movement. They felt alienated from Congress. They felt that Congress is linked with the Hindu Mahasabha and their propagandas are Hindu oriented.

59. How had Non-Cooperation Movement spread in cities? Explain. [Foreign 2016]

or

How did the Non-Cooperation Movement start in

cities? Explain its economic effects. [Delhi 2012]

or

How did the Non-Cooperation Movement spread in cities across the country? Explain its effect on the economic front.

**Ans :** [All India 2015]

- a. In January 1921, the Non-Cooperation Khilafat movement was started in which different social groups participated with different aspirations from the Swaraj. This movement was started with the middle class people of the towns and cities. The students left the schools and colleges, the teachers and headmasters resigned and the lawyers gave up their practices.
- b. The council elections were also boycotted except in Madras. The Justice Party which was a party of the non-Brahmins in Madras felt that power can be acquired only through the council elections.
- c. The economic effects of the Non-Cooperation Movement - foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops were picketed, foreign clothes were burnt, import of the foreign clothes came down by half, the value of import dropped, merchants and traders refused the trade of foreign goods, production of Indian mills and handloom rose.
- d. The Non-Cooperation Movement gradually slowed down in towns and cities because the khadi clothes were expensive which the poor people could not afford. There was need for Indian institutions for the teachers, students and the lawyers but these were very slow to come up. Thus once again people started using the mill made British clothes and the students, teachers and the lawyers rejoined their respective institutions.

60. How did the First World War create a new economic and political situation in India? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2016]

The First World War created a new economic situation in India. The three examples are:

- a. The defence expenditure was financed by the war loans, the increased taxes, raising the custom duties and introducing the income tax and increased prices of the commodities which caused economic hardship for the common people.
- b. For the continuous supply of the soldiers the villages were called upon and recruitment was done forcefully.
- c. There was a period of crop failure in many parts of the country which caused acute food shortages and millions of people perished due to the famine and the epidemics.

61. How had Non-Cooperation Movement spread in countryside? Explain. [Foreign 2016]

or

Explain the impact of Jallianwalla Bagh incident on the people.

**Ans :** [All India 2014]

- a. On 10th April 1919, fire was opened by the police in Amritsar on a peaceful procession and Martial law was imposed.
- b. On 13th April 1919, huge crowd had gathered in

the Jallianwalla Bagh. The crowd had two different objectives. Some of them gathered to protest the new repressive measures of the government whereas others gathered to attend the annual Baisakhi fair. Those who came from outside city were not aware of the\* martial law. General Dyer entered in the ground, closed the exit points and opened fire in which hundreds of innocent people were killed. This was basically done to create a feeling of terror in the minds of Satyagrahis.

- c. This infamous incident resulted in strikes, clashes with the police and the government buildings were attacked. This reaction of Indians was brutally suppressed by the government as the Satyagrahis were forced to rub their nose on the ground, crawl on streets and do salute to all the Sahibs. People were beaten up and villages were bombed.

62. Explain any five major problems posed by the First World War in India.

**Ans :** [All India 2015]

The national movement in India took a new shape after the end of the First World War. Here onwards the national movement incorporated different new social groups and also developed newer modes of struggle.

Due to the First World War the economic and political situation of India was altered. The defence expenditure was financed by the war loans, the increased taxes, raising the custom duties and introducing the income tax and increased prices of the commodities which caused economic hardship for the common people.

For the continuous supply of the soldiers the villages were called upon and recruitment was done forcefully.

There was a period of crop failure in many parts of the country which caused acute food shortages and millions of people perished due to the famine and the epidemics.

63. How did cultural processes help in creating a sense of collective belongingness in India? Explain. [Delhi 2011] or

How did a variety of cultural processes play an important role in developing a sense of nationalism in India? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2010, Delhi 2016]

The cultural processes helped in creating a sense of collective belongingness in India:

- Nationalism is a belief that all are a part of the same nation which binds the people together and make different communities, regions and language groups united.
- This came through the united struggles like the different Non-Cooperation Movements, Civil Disobedience movements, the wars like 1857, history, fiction, folklores, folk songs, prints, icons and symbols etc. all these helped in unifying the Indians and inspired a feeling of nationalism in them.
- The image of India was first visualized as Bharat Mata by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay and also a hymn 'Vande Mataram' was written by

him in 1870s. This hymn was later included in his novel Anandmath and sung in the swadeshi movement in Bengal. The image of Bharat Mata was portrayed as calm, composed, divine and spiritual which acquired different forms in different years by different artists. This image of India developed the ideas of nationalism in India.

- The Indian folklores were revived and the folk tales were recorded and sung by bards which gave a true picture of the traditional Indian culture and tells how it was ruined by the Britishers.
- A tricolor swadeshi flag, using red, green and yellow was designed during the swadeshi movement in Bengal which had 8 lotuses for the representation of the 8 provinces and a crescent moon for symbolizing the Hindus and the Muslims.
- A tricolor Swaraj flag was designed by Gandhiji in the year 1921 using the colours red, green and white. A spinning wheel was in the Centre of the flag which represented the Gandhian ideal of self-help.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

64. Describe the incident and impact of the Jallianwalla Bagh.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2015]

- Against the Rowlatt Act rallies were organized, the railway workshop workers went on strike and the shops were closed down. The British administration got alarmed and were scared about the disruption of the communication lines such as the railways and the telegraph. To suppress the nationalists the British administration picked up the local leaders and barred Gandhiji from entering Delhi. On 10th April 1919, the police opened fire in Amritsar on a peaceful procession and Martial law was imposed.
- On 13th April 1919, huge crowd had gathered in the Jallianwalla Bagh. The crowd had two different objectives. Some of them gathered to protest the new repressive measures of the government whereas others gathered to attend the annual Baisakhi fair. Those who came from outside city were not aware of the martial law. General Dyer entered in the ground, closed the exit points and opened fire in which hundreds of innocent people were killed. This was basically done to create a feeling of terror in the minds of Satyagrahis.
- This infamous incident resulted in strikes, clashes with the police and the government buildings were attacked. This reaction of Indians was brutally suppressed by the government as the Satyagrahis were forced to rub their nose on the ground, crawl



on streets and do salute to all the Sahibs, people were beaten up and villages were bombed.

65. Describe the developments which led to the launching of the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans :**

**[Foreign 2015]**

- a. In the year 1919, Gandhiji organized a Satyagraha against the Rowlatt Act which was passed hurriedly by the Imperial Legislative Council despite the opposition by the Indian members. He planned a non-violent Civil Disobedience against this Act which would start with a hartals on 6th April 1919.
  - b. The Rowlatt Act gave enormous power to the government for repressing the political activities. According to this Act the government can detain the political prisoners without trial for a period of two years.
  - c. On 13th April 1919, huge crowd had gathered in the Jallianwalla Bagh. The crowd had two different objectives. Some of them gathered to protest the new repressive measures of the government whereas others gathered to attend the annual Baisakhi fair. Those who came from outside city were not aware of the martial law. General Dyer entered the ground, closed the exit points and opened fire in which hundreds of innocent people were killed. This was basically done to create a feeling of terror in the minds of Satyagrahis.
  - d. A harsh peace treaty was going to be imposed on the Khalifa of the Ottoman empire the defeat in the First World War. In March 1919, a Khilafat committee was set up in Bombay to defend the temporal powers of the Khalifa. Mohammad Ali and Shaukat Ali were the two brothers among the youth generation of the Muslim leaders who discussed the issue with Mahatma Gandhi. Finally, in September 1920 session of Congress in Calcutta it was decided to start a Non-Cooperation in support of Khilafat and also for the Swaraj.
  - e. In the year 1909 Mahatma Gandhi wrote a book named 'Hind Swaraj' in which he wrote that the British survived in India only because of the cooperation of the Indians, otherwise they would have collapsed within a year.
  - f. Gandhiji planned to unfold the movement in stages. In the first stage the people surrendered the titles, boycotted civil services, army, police, schools, foreign goods, courts and legislative councils. The full Civil Disobedience Campaign was planned for the second phase, if the government try to repress the first phase. Many within the Congress were reluctant to boycott the council election which was scheduled for November 1920. Finally in December 1920, a compromise was made to adopt the non-cooperation.
66. Describe the significance of the Civil Disobedience Movement in the freedom struggle of India.
- Ans :** **[Foreign 2015]**
- a. On 31st March 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin, Mahatma Gandhi had stated eleven demands in this letter out of which some were of general interest and some were specific demands of different classes. The demands were wide ranging in order to bring together everyone under a united campaign. The most important demand was to abolish the salt tax as it was the most important item in food that is consumed by both the rich and the poor.
  - b. Now Gandhiji wanted Indians to refuse all sort of cooperation with the British and also break the colonial rules. Thereafter, people broke salt law, manufactured salt, staged demonstrations, boycotted the foreign clothes, picketed up the liquor shops, peasants refused to pay the taxes and revenues and the forest people violated the forest laws.
  - c. When Mahatma Gandhi went for the Round Table Conference in December 1931, he returned disappointed as the negotiations were broke down. He discovered this new cycle of repression by the British. The important Congress leaders were in jail and meetings, demonstrations and boycotts were prevented. As a result Gandhiji relaunched the Civil Disobedience Movement in 1932 which again lost its momentum by 1934.
  - d. These rich peasants were the main producers of the commercial crops. Due to the trade depression, falling prices and disappeared cash income they were not able to pay the revenue and also the government refused to reduce the revenue. Their notion for Swaraj struggle was basically a struggle against high revenue. For the poor peasantry groups, the meaning of Swaraj was lowering the revenue demand and also they wanted the unpaid rent to be remitted. But the Congress was reluctant to support to no rent and thus the relationship between the poor peasantry groups and Congress remained uncertain.
  - e. The Indian merchants and the industrialists became rich and powerful due to huge profits they made during the First World War. Thus they started opposing the colonial policies which restricted their business to expand. They had two demands - protection against the import of foreign goods and a favourable exchange ratio of rupee and sterling. Some of the industrial workers who participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement were the Nagpur industrial workers who selectively adopted some of the Gandhian ideas such as boycott of the foreign goods. They participated in the movement as part of their own movement against the low wages and the poor working conditions in the industries. Women also participated in large scale in the Civil Disobedience Movement during the Salt March by Gandhiji. They belonged to the high caste families from the urban areas and rich peasant households from the rural areas. For them it was a sacred duty to serve the nation.
  - f. The untouchables who called themselves Dalits or oppressed were not taking part in any such movements due to the ignorance of the Congress and the fear of offending the Sanatanis. But Gandhiji was of the view that Swaraj would not come for hundred years if the problem of untouchability is not removed from the country.

- g. The Dalit organisations were quite strong in Maharashtra and Nagpur and therefore in these regions only they participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement.

**67.** How could non-cooperation became a movement? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

**[Delhi 2014]**

- Non-cooperation against the colonial policies was issue-specific and the movements also used to be issue-specific that seek to achieve the objectives within a certain time period.
- Mahatma Gandhi called off the non-violent Civil Disobedient Movement against the Rowlatt Act because the violence was spreading all over. Now he wanted to launch a much wider movement in India by joining the Hindus and the Muslims of the country. That's why he took up the Khilafat issue.
- In the year 1909 Mahatma Gandhi wrote a book named Hind Swaraj in which he wrote that the British survived in India only because of the cooperation of the Indians, otherwise they would have collapsed within a year.
- Gandhiji planned to unfold the movement in stages. In the first stage the people surrendered the titles, boycotted civil services, army, police, schools, foreign goods, courts and legislative councils. The full Civil Disobedience Campaign was planned for the second phase if the government tried to repress the first phase. Many within the Congress were reluctant to boycott the council election which was scheduled for November 1920. Finally in December 1920, a compromise was made to adopt the non-cooperation.
- In January 1921, the Non-Cooperation Khilafat Movement was started in which different social groups participated with different aspirations from the Swaraj. This movement was started with the middle class people of the towns and cities. The students left the schools and colleges, the teachers and headmasters resigned and the lawyers gave up their practices.
- The council elections were also boycotted except in Madras. The Justice Party which was a party of the non-Brahmins in Madras felt that power can be acquired only through the council elections.

**68.** How did different social groups conceive the idea of Non-Cooperation? Explain with examples. **[AI 2014]**  
or

How did different social groups participate in the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

**[Delhi, Foreign 2014]**

The following were the different social groups who participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement with different objectives:

- The rich peasants were not able to pay the revenue due to the trade depression, falling prices and disappeared cash income and also the government refused to reduce the revenue. Their notion for Swaraj struggle was basically a struggle against high revenue.
- For the poor peasantry groups, the meaning of

Swaraj was lowering the revenue demand and also they wanted the unpaid rent to be remitted.

- The Indian merchants and the industrialists started opposing the colonial policies which restricted their business to expand. They had two demands — protection against the import of foreign goods and a favorable exchange ratio of rupee and sterling.
- Some of the industrial workers participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement were the Nagpur industrial workers as part of their own movement against the low wages and the poor working conditions in the industries.
- In the year 1930 and 1932, the railway workers and the dock workers went on strike. The Chhotanagpur tin mines workers also protested in rallies wearing Gandhian caps and boycotted the campaigns.
- Women also participated in large scale in the Civil Disobedience Movement during the Salt March by Gandhiji. They belonged to the high caste families from the urban areas and rich peasant households from the rural areas. For them it was a sacred duty to serve the nation.

**69.** How did people belonging to different communities, regions or languages develop a sense of collective belonging? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

**[All India 2014]**

The cultural processes helped in creating a sense of collective belongingness in India:

- Nationalism is a belief that all are a part of the same nation which binds the people together and make different communities, regions and language groups united.
- This came through the muted struggles like the different Non-Cooperation Movements, Civil Disobedience movements, the wars like 1857, history, fiction, folklores, folk songs, prints, icons and symbols etc. all these helped in unifying the Indians and inspired a feeling of nationalism in them.
- The image of India was first visualized as Bharat Mata by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay and also a hymn 'Vande 3 Mataram' was written by him in 1870s. This hymn was later included in his novel Anandmath and sung in the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal. The image of Bharat Mata was portrayed as calm, composed, divine and spiritual which acquired different forms in different years by different artists. This image of India developed the ideas of nationalism in India.
- The Indian folklores were revived and the folk tales were recorded and sung by bards which gave a true picture of the traditional Indian culture and tells how it was ruined by the Britishers.
- A tricolor swadeshi flag, using red, green and yellow was designed during the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal which had 8 lotuses for the representation of the 8 provinces and a crescent moon for symbolizing the Hindus and the Muslims.
- A tricolor Swaraj flag was designed by Gandhiji in the year 1921 using the colours red, green and white. A spinning wheel was in the Centre of the

flag which represented the Gandhian ideal of self-help.

70. How did peasants of Awadh use different methods to achieve their goal? Explain.

**Ans :**

**[Foreign 2014]**

The Non-Cooperation Movement spread to the countryside where the peasants and the tribals were taking part in this. Baba Ramachandra was a sanyasi who worked as an indentured labourer in Fiji. A movement was led by him leading the peasants against the talukdars and landlords because they demanded very high rents and other cesses from the peasants. The peasants were bound to work at the landlord's farm without any payment. Peasants had to do Begar, no security of tenure and also they were evicted regularly so that they could not acquire right over the leased land.

The various demands of the peasants in Awadh were - reduction of revenue, abolition of Begar and social boycott of oppressive landlords which was strengthened by the nai-dhobi bandhs organized by the Awadh panchayats to deprive the landlords from the services of the barbers and washermen.

In October 1920, Oudh Kisan Sabha was set up by Jawahar Lal Nehru, Baba Ramachandra and a few others. This is how the Awadh peasants were integrated in the process of upcoming wider Non- Cooperation Movement by the Congress. But the Awadh peasants invoked the name of Mahatma Gandhi to sanction all action and aspirations because during the movement they attacked the houses of the talukdars and merchants, looted the bazaars and took over the grain hoards. Some of the local leaders told the peasants that Gandhiji had declared not to pay taxes and also the land will be redistributed among the poor.

71. 'Dalit participation was limited in the Civil Disobedience Movement'. Examine the statement.

**Ans :**

**[Delhi 2013]**

The untouchables who called themselves Dalits or oppressed were not taking part in any such movements due to the ignorance of the Congress and the fear of offending the Sanatanis. But Gandhiji was of the view that Swaraj would not come for hundred years if the problem of untouchability is not removed from the country. Gandhiji called them 'harijan'- which means the children of God. Gandhiji fought for their temple entry rights and other rights such as access to public wells, schools and other public places. Gandhiji himself cleaned the toilets in order to dignify the work of the sweepers and also urged the upper caste people to change their heart and thinking about these untouchables.

The Dalit leaders demanded reserved seats in the educational institutions and separate electorates so that would be getting seats in the legislative councils and thus become politically empowered. "The Dalits believed that these are the only ways through which they will be treated equally in the society.

The Dalits organisations were quite strong in

Maharashtra and Nagpur and therefore in these regions only they participated in the Civil Disobedience movement.

In the Second Round Table Conference Dr. B.R.Ambedkar demanded separate electorates for the Dalits. Against this Gandhiji began a fast unto death because he believed that separate electorates for the Dalits would slow down the process of national integration.

Later on Ambedkar accepted Gandhian view and in the Poona Pact the depressed class people were given the reserved seats in the provincial and the central legislative council election but to be voted in by the general electorate.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

72. Why did Gandhiji start the 'Civil Disobedience Movement'? Explain any four features of Civil Disobedience Movement.

**[All India 2013]**

**Ans :**

As the Non-Cooperation Movement was turning violent in many places it was called off by Mahatma Gandhi in February 1922 to train the Satyagrahis for mass struggle. Some of the Congress leaders were not willing to continue the non-cooperation because they were tired of the mass struggle, wanted to participate in the council elections and they wanted to criticize the British policies within the council.

The Swaraj Party was formed within the Congress Party by C.R.Das and Motilal Nehru. It was formed with purpose to argue for return to council elections.

Due to the worldwide economic depression the agricultural prices began to fall, demands for agricultural goods fell and the export declined. This resulted in a countryside turmoil because now it was difficult for the peasants to sell their harvest and pay the high revenue. Against this situation of countryside turmoil the Tory government in Britain set up a commission named Simon Commission under Sir John Simon to look into the constitutional system in India and suggest the changes needed. There were no Indian members in this commission. When Mahatma Gandhi went for the round table conference in December 1931, he returned disappointed as the negotiations broke down. He discovered this new cycle of repression by the British. The important Congress leaders were in jail and meetings, demonstrations and boycotts were prevented. As a result Gandhiji relaunched the Civil Disobedience movement in 1932 which again lost its momentum by 1934.

73. How did the people and the colonial government react to the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

**Ans :** [Delhi2012]

As the Non-Cooperation Movement was turning violent in many places, it was called off by Mahatma Gandhi in February 1922 to train the Satyagrahis for mass struggle. Some of the Congress leaders were not willing to continue the non-cooperation because they were tired of the mass struggle, wanted to participate in the council elections and they wanted to criticize the British policies within the council.

The Swaraj Party was formed within the Congress party by C.R.Das and Motilal Nehru. It was formed with purpose to argue for return to council elections. Against this situation of countryside turmoil, the Tory government in Britain set up a commission named Simon Commission under Sir John Simon to look into the constitutional system in India and suggest the changes needed. There were no Indian members in this commission.

In the year 1928, Simon Commission arrived India and was greeted with the slogan 'Simon, go back'.

On 31st March 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin. Mahatma Gandhi had stated eleven demands in this letter out of which some were of general interest and some were specific demands of different classes. The demands were wide ranging in order to bring together everyone under a united campaign. The most important demand was to abolish the salt tax as it was the most important item in food that is consumed by both rich and poor.

To suppress this movement the colonial government started arresting the Congress, leaders. The arrest of Abdul Ghaffar Khan made the Indians angry and the crowd demonstrated in the streets of Peshawar. The arrest of Mahatma Gandhi made this demonstration more wide and worse as the industrial workers in Sholapur Maharashtra attacked the police posts, railway stations and other government buildings.

A brutal repression policy was adopted by the colonial government to suppress this and the police attacked the peaceful Satyagrahis, beat up the women and the children and arrested about 1 lakh people. This resulted in the call off of the movement by Gandhiji and Gandhi-Irwin Pact on 5th March 1931. He agreed for the round table conference and thus the political prisoners were released.

74. Explain the reactions of the Indian people against the Rowlatt Act passed through the Imperial Legislative Council in 1919. [All India 2012]

**Ans :**

In the year 1919, Gandhiji organized a Satyagraha against the Rowlatt Act which was passed hurriedly by the Imperial Legislative Council despite the opposition by the Indian members. He planned a non-violent Civil Disobedience against this Act which would start with a hartals on 6th April 1919.

The Rowlatt Act gave enormous power to the government for repressing the political activities. According to this Act the government can detain the

political prisoners without trial for a period of two years.

Against the Rowlatt Act rallies were organized, the railway workshop workers went on strike and the shops were closed down. The British administration got alarmed and were scared about the disruption of the communication lines such as the railways and the telegraph. On 13th April 1919, a huge crowd was gathered in the Jallianwalla Bagh.

This infamous incident resulted in strikes, clashes with the police and the government buildings were attacked. This reaction of Indians was brutally suppressed by the government as the Satyagrahis were forced to rub their nose on the ground, crawl on streets and do salute to all the Sahibs, people were beaten up and villages were bombed.

75. Explain the role played by the tribal peasants in the Gudum hills of Andhra Pradesh during the Non-Cooperation Movement. [Foreign 2012]

or

Who was Alluri Sitaram Raju? Explain his role in inspiring the rebels with Gandhiji's ideas.

**Ans :** [All India 2012]

In the early 1920s a militant guerrilla movement spread in the Gudum Hills of Andhra Pradesh. The Congress never approved such type of movements. This took place because the colonial government closed large forest areas and prevented the people from entering the forest for the purposes like grazing the cattle, collection of fuelwood and fruits.

The livelihood and the traditional rights of the local people were denied. The revolt began when the government forced the hill people to contribute Begar for the road building.

Alluri Sitaram Raju who was the leader of this revolt claimed that he had special powers like making correct astrological predictions, healing the people and could survive even bullet shots. Therefore the rebels proclaimed him the incarnation of God.

Though Raju favoured the Gandhian styles and greatness and urged people to wear khadi and give up drinking but at the same time he asserted the use of force and violence to get India liberated.

The police stations were attacked, British officials were killed and guerrilla warfare continued for Swaraj. As a result in the year 1924, Raju was arrested and executed and hence became a folk hero.

76. Describe the actions taken by the British administration against the nationalists who opposed the Rowlatt Act. [All India 2012]

**Ans :**

In the year 1919, Gandhiji organized a Satyagraha against the Rowlatt Act which was passed hurriedly by the Imperial Legislative Council despite the opposition by the Indian members. He planned a non-violent Civil Disobedience against this Act which would start with a hartals on 6th April 1919.

The Rowlatt Act gave enormous power to the



government for repressing the political activities. According to this Act the government can detain the political ‘ prisoners without trial for a period of two years.

Against the Rowlatt Act, rallies were organized, the railway workshop workers went on strike and the shops were closed down. The British administration got alarmed and were scared about the disruption of the communication lines such as the railways and the telegraph. To suppress the nationalist the British administration picked up the local leaders and barred Gandhiji from entering Delhi. On 10th April 1919, the police opened fire in Amritsar on a peaceful procession and Martial law was imposed.

On 13th April 1919, huge was gathered in the Jallianwalla Bagh.

This infamous incident resulted in strikes, clashes with the police and the government buildings were attacked. This reaction of Indians was brutally suppressed by the government as the Satyagrahis were forced to rub their nose on the ground, crawl on streets and do salute to all the Sahibs, people were beaten up and villages were bombed.

77. Examine the role of industrial working class in the Civil Disobedience Movement. [Foreign 2012]

**Ans :**

Most of the industrial workers did not participate in the Civil Disobedience movement as the industrialists were close to the Congress. Some of the industrial workers who participated in the Civil Disobedience movement were the Nagpur industrial workers who selectively adopted some of the Gandhian ideas such as boycott of the foreign goods. They participated in the movement as part of their own movement against the low wages and the poor working conditions in the industries. In the year 1930 and 1932, the railway workers and the dock workers went on strike. The Chotanagpur tin mines workers also protested in rallies wearing Gandhian caps and boycotted the campaigns. But the Congress was not willing to include their demands.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

## The Making of Global World

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Why did big European powers meet in Berlin in 1885?

**Ans :** [Delhi 2018]

The big European powers met in Berlin for completing the carving up of the territories in Africa among them in the year 1885.

2. What kind of silk routes have been identified by historians ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Historians have identified several silk routes, over land and by sea, interlacing wider regions of Asia and connecting Asia with Europe and Northern Africa.

3. What were 'Silk Routes' ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Silk routes were dynamic pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world.

4. What is El Dorado ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

El Dorado was deemed to be the fabled city of gold.

5. What kind of cultural exchanges were made through 'Silk Route' ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 20015]

'Silk Route' was a popular network as it was frequented by the Christian missionaries, Muslim and Buddhist preachers.

6. Which common foods were introduced to our ancestors after Columbus discovered America ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Potatoes, soya, maize, tomatoes, chillies, groundnuts and sweet potatoes were introduced in Europe and Asia after the discovery of America by Columbus.

7. How did dependency on potatoes kill the poorest peasants of Ireland ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

The poor peasants of Ireland became so dependent on potatoes that when potato blight occurred in the mid 1840s, hundreds of thousands of people died of starvation.

8. How did food like 'Noodles' travel to various parts of the world and got adopted by different names ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

The food like 'Noodles' travelled west from China to become Spaghetti and Pasta in Italy. It is also believed that Arab traders took pasta to fifth century Sicily, an island in Italy.

9. Who forced the government to abolish Corn Laws ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Industrialists and urban dwellers compelled the government to abolish Corn Laws.

10. What was Paper Partition ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2010]

In 1885, the major European powers assembled in Berlin to divide the countries of Africa between them. This event was called Paper Partition.

11. Why did the Big European Powers meet in Berlin in 1885 ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2010]

On account of the Partition of Africa, the Big European powers met in Berlin at a conference in 1884-85.

12. Why did people migrate from Europe to Australia and America ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Due to the increasing demand for food and employment, people from Europe migrated to Australia and America in search for better future prospects.

13. How frozen meat reached European market at reduced cost ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2006]

Animals were slaughtered for food in America, Australia or New Zealand and then transported to Europe as frozen meat at reduced cost.

14. Which important inventions transformed nineteenth century world ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2006]

The railways, steamships and the telegraph were the significant inventions that transformed the nineteenth century world.

15. How did Rinderpest reach Africa ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2010]

Rinderpest was borne by infected cattle imported from British Asia to feed the Italian soldiers in East Africa.

16. What was Rastafarianism ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2010]

Rastafarianism means a protest religion that reflected social and cultural connections with Indian emigrants in the Caribbean region.

17. Who was indentured labourer ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

Indentured labourer signifies a 'bonded labourer' who obtained contract to work for an employer for a

particular period of time.

18. Why were indentured labourer hired from India and China ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

In the nineteenth century, thousands of Indians and Chinese labourers were hired to work on plantations, mines, and road and railways construction projects as indentured labourers.

19. Can you name some prominent Indians whose descendents were migrant indentured labourers in West Indies ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2007]

Nobel Prize winning writer V.S. Naipaul and West Indies cricketers Shivnarine Chandrapaul and Ramnaresh Sarwan.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

20. Describe any three problems faced by Indian cotton weavers in the nineteenth century. [Delhi 2018]

**Ans :**

The three problems faced by Indian cotton weavers in the nineteenth century were:

- Earlier, India was the main exporter of fine cotton to Britain but when the British cotton industries began to expand after industrialisation, they put pressure on the government to restrict the import of cotton to Britain.
  - As a result, tariffs were imposed on the import of cotton cloth from India which protected the local manufacturers in Britain.
  - Thus the inflow of the fine cotton from India declined.
21. Explain how the First World War was so horrible a war like none other before. [All India 2010]

or

Why is it said that there was no other war earlier like the First World War? State in three points.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

There was no other war earlier like the First World War because of the following reasons:

- The First World War which took place mainly in Europe from 1914 to 1918 had a profound impact on economic and political stability which took over three decades to overcome,
  - The leading industrial nations of the world were taking part, they wanted to harness the vast powers of the modern industries for the greatest possible destructions. Modern weapons like tanks, aircrafts, machine guns and chemical weapons were used, large ships and trains were used to move the recruited soldiers.
  - Around 9 million died and 20 million injured, the industries were restructured to produce war-related goods and also the societies were reorganized for war.
22. Why did Europeans flee to America in the 19th century? Give three reasons. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Europe was facing the problems like poverty, hunger, deadly diseases, religious conflicts, slave traders etc. and therefore many Europeans shifted to America by the 18th century.

23. "The relocation of industry to low-wage countries stimulated world trade and capital flows." Justify the statement. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

It is true to say that the relocation of industry to low wage countries stimulated the world trade and capital flows. From the 1970s the MNCs shifted their production operations in the low wage Asian countries where they could maximize their profits. This step of the MNCs again stimulated the world trade and capital flows.

24. Why did the household incomes decline after the First World War? Give two reasons, [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

The various reasons for the decline in the family income after the First World War were:

- The large scale deaths and injuries in the First World War reduced the working age people in Europe, declined the family income and the women had to undertake jobs to run the family.
- The First World War led to an economic boom which means large increase in demand, production and employment but the production decreased and the unemployment increased when the war ended. In the year 1921, there was huge job losses, almost 1/5th of the British workers were out of job.
- Again after the War, Eastern Europe revived the wheat production. Due to this there was tremendous supply of wheat in the world market which resulted in falling prices, decline of the rural income and the farmers fell in debt.

25. Describe the circumstances responsible for the formation of G-77. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

The developing countries were not benefitted from the fast growing western economies so they organized together and formed a Group of 77 which is commonly referred to as G-77 and demanded a new international economic order.

Their demand for NIEO was to get the real control over their own natural resources, development assistance, and fairer prices for the raw materials and access for their manufactured goods in the markets of the developed nations.

26. "China became an attractive destination for investment by foreign MNCs in the nineteenth and twentieth century." Justify the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

It is true to say that in the 19th and 20th century, China became an attractive destination for investment by the foreign MNCs. This is due to the following reasons:

- MNCs shifted their production units to low wage countries like China by the late 1870s.
- Due to the highly skilled people in large numbers

it was easy to get the skilled labour at low cost in China.

- c. The new economic policy in China and better opportunity for the MNCs to maximize their profit also played an important role in this.

27. How did the withdrawal of US loans during the phase of the Great Depression affect the rest of the world? Explain in three points.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

During the First World War, the US financed through loans a number of countries. The withdrawal of US loans affected the rest of the world in the following three ways:

- a. It caused the failure of some major banks and collapse of currencies in Europe.
- b. The banks in US slashed domestic lending and called back loans but many households were unable to repay the loan due to decline in sale of agricultural products.
- c. Collapse of business and falling income which finally resulted into collapse of the US banking system.

To protect its economy, the US doubled the import duties which led to another severe blow to the world trade.

28. Explain any three types of flows within the international economy in exchanges. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

There were three types of movements or flows noticed by the economist in the international market.

- a. Flow of trade in which there was large scale trade of goods such as clothes and food stuffs.
- b. Flow of labour in which the people migrated from one place to another in large numbers in search of employment.
- c. Flow of capital in which capital moved over long distances for short term or long term investments.

29. How did technology help to solve hardship of food availability throughout the world in the late-nineteenth century? Explain with example. [CBSE 2014]

or

What was the impact of technology on food availability?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Railways, ports, harbours and settlements were developed in America and Australia for the smooth supply of food stuffs and for the industrial raw materials.

Now the food was grown by the low paid agricultural workers and transported from thousands of miles through railways and ships.

To solve the problems of this meat trade, refrigerated ships were developed for carrying these for a longer distance. The animals were slaughtered at the starting point and then transported as frozen meat to Europe which solved the problems of space, shipping cost and the price of the meat in the European market.

As the price of the meat reduced in the market, the European poor could also consume butter, eggs and meat which helped in better living conditions and

social peace in the country.

30. Explain the impact of First World War on the British economy. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

The First World War which took place mainly in Europe from 1914 to 1918 had ; a profound impact on the economy of Britain.

- a. The large scale deaths and injuries in the First World War reduced the working age people in Europe, declined the family income and the women had to undertake jobs to run the family.
- b. During the First World War the US became the international creditor from being international debtor because, to finance the war, Britain borrowed huge sums of money from the US banks and US public.
- c. The debt mounted and thus Britain was not able to produce goods for exports.

31. Describe the canal colonies. Where and why were they introduced? [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

A network of irrigation canals was built in India in the Punjab region for converting the semi-arid wastelands into fertile cultivable lands. The peasants settled near the canal were from other parts of Punjab and thus the area was called the canal colonies.

32. Describe the effects of abolishing the Corn Laws.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

According to the Corn Laws in Britain, the government restricted the import of the corn which increased the prices of food items in Britain. The industrialists and the urban dwellers forced the government to abolish the Corn Laws.

The abolition of Corn Laws was responsible for the movement of people to the cities and overseas because the imported corn was much cheaper which the British farmers were unable to compete as a result they either left the cultivation or were thrown out of the farm.

33. When was the Brettonwoods conference convened? State the main aim of the conference. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

The framework for preserving the economic stability and full employment was agreed upon at the UN monetary and financial conference which was held in 1944 July, at Brettonwoods in New Hampshire (USA). The Brettonwoods twins or the Brettonwoods institutions are - the International Monetary Fund and the World Bank which commenced its financial operations in the year 1947.

Though these two institutions are controlled by the western industrial powers, the US has right of veto over the key decisions.

The IMF was established at the Bretton-woods Conference for dealing with the external surpluses and deficits of its member Countries whereas the World Bank was setup to finance the post war reconstruction.

The Brettonwoods system was based on fixed exchange rates in which the national currencies were pegged to the dollar at a fixed rate of exchange.



34. Define trade surplus. Why did Britain have a trade surplus with India? [CBSE 2013]

**Ans :**

Trade surplus is a condition in which the value of export exceeds the value of import. Earlier, India was the main exporter of fine cotton to Britain but when the British cotton industries began to expand after the industrialisation they put pressure on the government to restrict the import of cotton to Britain.

As a result, tariffs were imposed on the import of cotton cloth from India which protected the local manufacturers in Britain and thus the inflow of the fine cotton from India declined.

Even though Britain had a trade surplus with India which means that the value of British exports to India was more than the value of British imports from India.

35. Before the arrival of outsiders, most of the Africans had a little reason to work for a wage. Explain three reasons.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- Earlier, Africa had vast land resources and minerals which attracted the European powers to establish plantations and mines which could be exported to Europe. But there was shortage of labour because the African people rarely worked for a wage because they had abundant land and enough livestock for the livelihood of the small population.
- To solve the problem of labour shortage, recruitment and retaining the labour, heavy taxes were imposed, inheritance laws were changed and confined the mineworkers in the compound itself.
- To pay the heavy taxes, the Africans were bound to work for wages on plantations and mines. According to the new inheritance law, only one member in the family was allowed to inherit the land and thus the other members of the family were displaced from the land and pushed into the labour market. The mine workers also did not have the freedom of movement.

36. Explain three effects of the abolition of Corn Laws.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

The three effects of the abolition of the Corn Laws were:

- It led to the movement of people to the cities and overseas.
- The imported corn was much cheaper which the British farmers were unable to compete.
- As a result they either left the cultivation or were thrown out of the farm.

37. Describe in brief the destruction caused during the Second World War. [All India 2010]

**Ans :**

The Second World War took place from 1939 to 1945 between the Axis powers (which included Nazi Germany, Japan and Italy) and the Allies (which included Britain, France, Soviet Union and US).

60 million people were killed and millions were injured in this war in which civilian deaths were more

than the soldiers. Many European and Asian cities were destroyed due to the aerial bombardment and artillery attacks.

This war had caused great social and economic fracture. The post war 1 reconstruction was long and difficult.

38. How was the food problem solved in Britain after scrapping the Corn Laws? Explain.

**Ans :** [All India 2009]

The abolition of Corn Laws was responsible for the movement of people to the cities and overseas because the imported corn was much cheaper which the British farmers were unable to compete as a result they either left the cultivation or were thrown out of the farm.

The consumption of food crops rose in Britain due to the fall in prices. The food imports increased due to the higher income caused by the faster industrial growth in Britain.

This increased demand of food crops in Britain was fulfilled by the countries in Western Europe, Russia, America and Australia where the lands were cleared for the expansion of the food grain production.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

39. Explain any three benefits of refrigerated ships.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The three benefits of refrigerated ships were:

- There was trade in meat till the 1870s from America to Europe. The cattle were slaughtered after they reach the destination. There were number of problems in carrying the five animals into the ships such as they took lot of space, many died on the way, fell ill, lost their weight, became inedible.
- To solve the problems of this meat trade, refrigerated ships were developed for carrying these for a longer distance. The animals were slaughtered at the starting point and then transported as frozen meat to Europe which solved the problems of space, shipping cost and the price of the meat in the European market.
- As the price of the meat reduced in the market, the European poor could also consume butter, eggs and meat which helped in better living conditions and social peace in the country. This condition supported for imperialism abroad.

40. Explain the following:

(a) G-77 (b) The Great Depression

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

- G-77: The developing countries were not benefitted from the fast growing western economies so they organized together and formed a group of 77 which is commonly referred to as G-77 and demanded a new international economic order.

Their demand for NIEO was to get the real control over their own natural resources, development assistance, and fairer prices for the raw materials and access for their manufactured goods in the markets of the developed nations.

- b. The Great Depression: The year 1929 was called the year of Great Depression which lasted till mid-1930s. Production, employment, income and trade declined all over the world due to which the agricultural regions and communities were worst affected because the prices of the agricultural products declined sharply and for long period than the Price fall in the industrial goods.

The two main reasons for this Great Depression were the overproduction in the US and the withdrawal of US loans which caused the failure of some major banks and collapse of currencies in Europe.

41. Explain giving examples, the role played by technological inventions in transforming 19th century world.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Railways, ports, harbours and settlements were developed in America and Australia for the smooth supply of food stuffs and for the industrial raw materials.

A network of irrigation canals was built in India in the Punjab region for converting the semi-arid wastelands into fertile cultivable lands.

All these developments throughout the world was possible due to the development in technologies such as railways, steamships, telegraph etc. which were the results of socio-economic and political factors.

Improvement in faster means of transport for the quicker delivery of goods and people from the supply areas to the demand areas. To solve the problems of meat trade, refrigerated ships were developed for carrying these for a longer distance. The animals were slaughtered at the starting point and then transported as frozen meat to Europe which solved the problems of space, shipping cost and the price of the meat in the European market.

42. The Spanish conquest and colonization of America was decisively underway by the mid sixteenth century. Explain with examples. [CBSE 2015]

or

How did the global transfer of disease in pre-modern world helped in colonisation of the Americas?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

The Portuguese and the Spanish conquered America not just with the conventional military weapons but also with the germs such as the small pox.

The small pox was carried on their person (Spanish invaders were immune to this disease) to America for which the American Indians were not immune to and proved a deadly weapon as it killed the whole community there.

These diseases could not be bought or captured and turned against the European invaders unlike the guns and other conventional weapons.

43. Describe in brief the world economic condition in the post first world war period. [All India 2010]

**Ans :**

- a. Before the First World War, Britain was the world's leading economy but after the war Britain

was over burdened with external debts.

- b. In the meantime, industries in India and Japan developed a lot. Due to these conditions it became difficult for Britain to get its dominance over India back and compete with Japan internationally. 'The First World War led to an economic boom which means large increase in demand, production and employment but the production decreased and the unemployment increased when the war ended. In the year 1921, there was huge job losses, almost 1/5th of the British workers were out of job.
- c. Eastern Europe was the major supplier of wheat in the world which was disrupted when Europe was bpsy with the First World War. During this war period the production of wheat rose in Canada, US and Australia. Again after the war Eastern
- d. Europe revived the wheat production. Due to this there was tremendous supply of wheat in the world market which resulted in falling prices, decline of the rural income and the farmers fell in debt.

44. "Trade and cultural exchange always went hand in hand." Explain the statement in the light of Silk Route.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

There were several silk routes over land and sea which helped in trade and cultural links between the different countries of the world especially Asia, North Africa and Europe.

The silk routes got its name due to the Chinese silk cargoes along these routes which were actively functional before the Christian era and upto the 15th century. Chinese pottery, Indian spices and precious metals like gold and silver from Europe had travelled through these silk routes.

These silk routes were also used for the cultural exchange by the Christian missionaries, Muslim preachers and the Buddhist.

45. Explain the three types of movements or flows within international economic exchange. Mention any one example of any one type of flow from India and one from England.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

There were three types of movements or flows noticed by the economist in the international market.

- a. Flow of trade in which there was large scale trade of goods such as clothes and food stuffs.
- b. Flow of labour in which the people migrated from one place to another in large numbers in search of employment.
- c. Flow of capital in which capital moved over long distances for short term or long term investments.

Railways, ports, harbours and settlements were developed in America and Australia for the smooth supply of food stuffs and for the industrial raw materials. All this required capital and labour which flowed from the financial centres such as London. During this period, around 50 million people migrated from Europe to America and Australia and around 150 million people migrated all over the world in

search of their better future.

The indentured labourers were hired from India (Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, central India and dry districts of Tamilnadu) for a period of five years to work on plantations.

46. How did rinderpest become instrumental in subjugating the Africans? [CBSE 2014]

or

Describe briefly the effects of rinderpest in Africa in the 1890s. [All India 2009]

or

Describe the impact of 'Rinderpest' on people's livelihoods and local economy in Africa in the 1890s.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2018]

Rinderpest was a disease of cattle plague spreading fastly in Africa in the 1880s. It had terrible impact on the livelihood and the local economy in Africa.

This disease was carried by the infected cattle which were imported from the British Asia in order to feed the Italian soldiers who were deputed for invading Eritrea in the east Africa.

Rinderpest spread from the east Africa to the West Africa and reached the Atlantic coast of Africa in the year 1892 and the southernmost tip of Africa (the Cape) in 1897.

Along the way from East to West Africa this rinderpest killed 90% of the cattle which destroyed the livelihoods of the Africans.

Now the leftover or scarce cattle was monopolized by the planters, mine owners and the colonial governments. This incident helped the European powers to conquer and subdue Africa and easily forced the Africans into the labour market.

47. How did the Great Depression of 1929 affect the farmers and the middle classes in India in different ways?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

The great depression of US also affected India severely. The exports and imports fell down almost by 50%.

- The peasants who were producing for the world market were hit hard than the urban dwellers because of the sharp decline in the price of the agricultural products in the international market and also the colonial government refused to reduce the revenue.
- The jute producers of Bengal fell into debt due to the collapse of the gunny exports and decline in the price of the raw jute. To come out of the situation of indebtedness, Indian peasants used their savings, mortgaged lands and sold their jewellery and precious metals.
- During this depression period, India became an important exporter of Gold which helped Britain to speed up its recovery and also helped in promoting the global economic recovery.
- The urban India people were not much affected as their income was fixed. Either they were dependent on rental income or they were salaried employees.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

File Revision Date : 1 July 2019

CBSE Previous Year Exams Questions Exam 2019-2020

CLASS : 10th

SUB : Social Science

Unit 1 : India and the Contemporary World - II

For 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank

visit [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) or whatsapp at 8905629969

# CHAPTER 1.5

## Print Culture and Modern World

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Why did the Roman Catholic Church impose control over publisher's and booksellers? [CBSE 2018]

**Ans :**

The Roman Catholic Church troubled by effects of popular readings and questionings of faith, imposed severe controls over publishers and booksellers.

2. Which place had the breakthrough of first printing press?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

The breakthrough of first printing press took place in Strasbourg in Germany.

3. Mention the technique adopted to educate white collar workers in Europe during the 19th century.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

It was the technique of lending libraries to educate white collar workers in Europe during the 19th century.

4. Mention any one technique of preserving the manuscript of India. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

These were preserved by pressing between the wooden covers or sewn together.

5. Who brought the print culture to Japan?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

The print culture was brought to Japan by the Buddhist Missionaries from China.

6. Name the Chinese traditional book, which was folded and stitched at the side. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

The traditional 'Accordion Book' of China was folded and stitched at the side because both the sides of the thin; porous sheets could not be printed.

7. Mention any one characteristic feature of the off-set press.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The offset press was able to print upto 6 colours at a time.

8. Name the first edition of the Indian religious text published in vernacular. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Ramcharitmanas of Tulsidas was the first edition of the Indian religious text published in vernacular.

9. Name the oldest Japanese book.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

The Buddhist Diamond Sutra was the oldest Japanese book.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

10. Why couldn't the production of hand written manuscripts satisfy the ever increasing demand for books? Give any three reasons. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

The production of handwritten manuscripts could not satisfy the ever increasing demand for books due to the following reasons:

- a. In India, there is rich and old tradition of handwritten manuscripts in different languages which were copied on palm leaves or on handmade papers.
- b. These manuscripts were highly expensive and fragile.
- c. They needed careful handling.

11. Explain any three features of handwritten manuscripts before the age of print in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2010, 2014, 2016]

The three features of the handwritten manuscripts before the age of print in India are:

- a. In India, there is rich and old tradition of handwritten manuscripts in different languages which were copied on palm leaves or on handmade papers.
- b. These manuscripts were highly expensive, fragile and needed careful handling.
- c. These were preserved by pressing between the wooden covers or sewn together.
- d. Reading the manuscripts was not easy as they were written in different styles which limits its use.

12. Explain any three factors responsible for the invention of new printing techniques. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

The three factors responsible for the invention of new printing techniques were:

- a. The handwritten manuscripts production was not sufficient to meet the demand.
- b. These manuscripts were highly expensive, fragile and needed careful handling.
- c. It was expensive and time consuming to copy the handwritten manuscripts.

13. How were magazines different from novels? Write any three differences. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**



## Resources and Development

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Classify resources on the basis of origin.

**Ans :** [2018]

On the basis of origin resources are classified as biotic and abiotic resources.

2. Give one difference between renewable and non-renewable resources. [2017]

**Ans :**

Renewable: Replenished by nature and may be overused e. g., crops and plants.

Non-renewable: which get exhausted after years of use. e.g, crude oil.

3. Give an example of non-renewable resources. [2017]

**Ans :**

Coal/Minerals.

4. What are resources which are found in a region but have not been utilised called? [2015]

**Ans :**

Potential resources.

5. Which resources are surveyed and determined on the basis of their quantity and quality for utilisation?

**Ans :** [2014]

Developed resources.

6. Give examples of abiotic resources. [2014]

**Ans :**

Rocks and metals.

7. Give examples of biotic resources. [2014]

**Ans :**

Human beings, flora, fauna, fisheries, livestock, etc.

8. Which relief features of India has 30 percent of the total surface area of country? [SR 2014]

**Ans :**

Mountain.

9. Which cold desert is relatively isolated from the rest of the country? [SR 2014]

**Ans :**

Ladakh

10. Which regions of India have well developed terrace farming? [2015]

**Ans :**

Western and central Himalayas

11. Which soil types is made up of lava flows? [2014]

**Ans :**

Black soil.

12. In which states has mining caused severe land degradation? [2014]

**Ans :**

Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh and Odisha.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

13. What is the percentage share of plains in the total land area?

**Ans :** [2014]

43%.

14. What is the main cause of land degradation in Punjab?

**Ans :** [2014]

Over irrigation.

15. In which states is black soil found?

**Ans :** [S.P. 2014, 2015]

Maharashtra, Saurashtra, Malwa, Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh.

16. Which soil is ideal for growing cotton?

**Ans :** [S.R 2014, 2015]

Regur soil.

17. In which states overgrazing is responsible for land degradation? [2015]

**Ans :**

Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Gujarat and Maharashtra.

18. In which states laterite soil is found? [2015]

**Ans :**

Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh, and hilly areas of Odisha and Assam.

19. Which soil type is the result of intense leaching due to

heavy rainfall ? [2015]

**Ans :**

Laterite soil.

20. Name the land with deep channels that is unfit for cultivation. [2016]

**Ans :**

Bad land.

21. Which state has the largest area under black soil?

**Ans :** [2016]

Maharashtra.

22. What are the methods of checking soil erosion?

**Ans :** [2017]

Strip cropping, terrace farming and contour ploughing.

23. Gully erosion is common in which basin?

**Ans :** [2017]

Chambal Basin.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

24. What is Agenda 21? List its two principles. [2017]

**Ans :**

Agenda 21 was adopted at first International Earth Summit held in 1992 at Rio de Janeiro Brazil.

The two principles are as follows:

- To combat environmental damage, poverty, disease through global cooperation on common interests, mutual needs and shared responsibilities.
- Every local government should draw its own local Agenda 21.

25. Why is it essential to have resource planning? Explain any three reasons. [2017]

**Ans :**

- If the present trend of resource depletion by few individuals continues, the future of our planet is in danger.
- Planning is essential for sustainable existence of all forms of life.
- Indiscriminate exploitation of resources has led to global ecological crises.

26. In India, some regions are rich in certain types of resources but deficient in some other resources". Do you agree with the statement? Support your answer with any three examples. [2017]

**Ans :**

Yes, there are regions which are rich in certain types of resources but are deficient in some other resources.

- Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh are rich in minerals and coal deposits.
- Arunachal Pradesh has abundance of water resources but lacks in infrastructural development.
- Rajasthan is endowed with solar and wind energy but lacks in water resources.
- Ladakh has rich cultural heritage but lacks in water resources and infrastructure.

27. Distinguish between red soil and laterite soil stating

any three points of distinction. [2015]

**Ans :**

	Red soil	Laterite soil
1.	Red soil develops on crystalline igneous rocks in areas of low rainfall.	Laterite soil develops in areas with high temperature and heavy rainfall.
2.	Red soil is found in parts of Odisha and Chhattisgarh, southern parts of the middle of Ganga plain and along the piedmont zone of the Western ghats.	Laterite soil is mainly found in Karnataka, Kerala and the hilly areas of Odisha and Assam.
3.	Red soil develops a reddish colour due to diffusion of iron in crystalline and metamorphic rocks	In laterite soil, humus content is very low.

28. Which is the main cause of land degradation in Gujarat, Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh? How can it be checked? Explain. [2015]

**Ans :**

The main cause of land degradation is large scale overgrazing

Measures to check include:

- Afforestation and proper management of grazing.
- Planting of shelter belts of plants.
- Stabilization of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes.
- Control on overgrazing.

29. Describe any three measures of controlling land degradation. [2015, 2014, 2012]

or

Explain any three steps taken to solve the problem of land degradation in India. [2011]

**Ans :**

- Afforestation and proper management of grazing can help to some extent.
- Planting of shelter belts, control on over-grazing, stabilisation of sand dune by growing thorny bushes.
- Proper management of wastelands, control of mixing activities, proper discharge and disposal of industrial effluents and wastes after treatment can reduce land and water degradation in industrial and sub-urban areas are some of the methods to check land degradation.

30. Mention any three features of arid soils. [2014]

**Ans :**

Features of arid soils :

- Arid soils range from red to brown in colour.
- They are generally sandy in texture and saline in nature.
- Due to dry climate, high temperature, evaporation is faster and the soil lacks humus and moisture.
- The lower horizons of the soil are occupied by Kankar because of the increasing calcium content downwards.

(Any three).

31. 'Land is a natural resource of utmost importance'. Justify the statement with appropriate arguments. [2014]

**Ans :**

- We live on land, we perform our economic activities on land and we use it in different ways.
- It supports natural vegetation, wildlife, human life, economic activities, transport and communication systems.
- It is an asset of a finite magnitude.

32. Indiscriminate use of resources had led to numerous problems.' Justify this statement. [2014, 2012, 2011]

**Ans :**

Resources are vital for human survival and it was believed that resources are free gift of nature. The indiscriminate use of resources led to the following problems:

- To satisfy the greed of few individuals, depletion of resources has continued.
- Due to the accumulation of resources in few hands, the society gets divided into two segments, e.g., rich and poor.
- Indiscriminate use of resources has ' led to ecological crises, e.g., ozone layer depletion, land degradation, global warming and environmental pollution.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

33. How can you contribute to minimize the pollution. Explain. [2014]

**Ans :**

We can contribute to minimize the pollution by:

- Planting more plants and trees.
- Using non-conventional sources of energy such as solar and wind energy.
- Using public transport instead of personal car/ motor bike etc.
- Saving water and electricity.

34. Define the following terms:

- Current fallow land
- Other than current fallow
- Cultural waste land

[2013]

**Ans :**

- Current fallow land: Left uncultivated / for one or less than one agricultural year.
- Other than current fallow: Left uncultivated for past 1 to 5 agricultural years.
- Cultural waste land: Left uncultivated for more than 5 agricultural years.

35. Explain any three human activities responsible for land degradation in India. [2013, 2012]

or

How are human activities responsible for the degradation of land? [2012]

**Ans :**

- Mining:** Mining sites are abandoned after excavation work is complete leaving deep scars in states such as Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh and Odisha. Deforestation due to mining has caused severe land degradation.
- Over irrigation:** Over irrigation in the states of Punjab, Haryana, western Uttar Pradesh, has caused water logging and increase in salinity of soil.
- Overgrazing:** Overgrazing in states such as Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra is a huge cause due to cattle population
- Industries:** Mineral processing industry like grinding of limestone for cement industry and calcite and soapstone for ceramic industry generate huge quantity of dust. This retards the process of infiltration of water into the soil.
- Industrial waste:** Industrial effluents also have become a major source of land degradation.

36. Suggest any three methods of soil conservation suitable to Indian conditions. [2012]

or

What steps can be taken to control soil erosion in hilly areas? [2012]

**Ans :**

Methods of soil conservation:

- Ploughing along the contour lines can decrease the speed of water flow down the slopes.
- Step or terrace cultivation on slopes restricts erosion. Western and Central Himalayas have well-developed terrace farming.
- Strip cropping: Here large fields can be divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops. This breaks up the force of the wind.
- Shelter belt plantation: Trees are planted in rows. These shelter belts have led to the stabilisation of sand dunes and in stabilising the desert in western India.

37. What is meant by the term "resource"? List the types of resources classified on the basis of its ownership. [2012]

**Ans :**

- Resource:** Everything available in our environment which can be used to satisfy our needs, provided, it is technologically accessible, economically feasible and culturally acceptable is known as a resource.
- Types of resources on the basis of ownership are: Individual, community, national and international.

38. Distinguish between the renewable and nonrenewable resources. [2012]

**Ans :**

- Renewable resources:** Resources which can be renewed or reproduced by mechanical, physical or chemical processes are known as renewable or replenishable resources, e.g., solar and wind

energy, water, forests and wildlife, etc.

- b. **Non-renewable resources :** These occur over very long geological times. Minerals and fossil fuels are examples of such resources. These resources take millions of years in their formation. Some of the resources like metals are recyclable and some of them such as fossil fuels cannot be recycled and get exhausted with their use.

39. Distinguish between stock and potential resource. Give one example of each. [2012]

**Ans :**

	Stock	Potential resources:
1.	They are found in the environment.	They are found in a region.
2.	They are not accessed due to the lack of technology.	They have not been utilized or developed.
3.	Example: Water is a compound of two inflammable gases—hydrogen and oxygen, which can be used as a rich source of energy. But we do not have the required technical know-how to use them for this purpose.	Example: Rajasthan and Gujarat have enormous potential for the development of wind and solar energy but they are yet to be developed for various reasons.

40. Distinguish between Khadar and Bangar soil. [2012, 2011]

or

How are alluvial soils formed? How is Bangar different from Khadar? [Marking Scheme, 2012]

**Ans :**

Alluvial soil: It is soil formed by the sediments deposited by river water.

S.No	Khadar soil	Bangar soil
1.	It is a new alluvial soil.	It is an old alluvial soil.
2.	Lower concentration of kankar nodules.	Higher concentration of kankar nodules.
3.	It has more fine particles.	It has less fine particles.
4.	It is more fertile.	It is less fertile.

41. Explain any three factors responsible for soil formation. [2012, 2011]

**Ans :**

- The parent rock is the first factor which provides the basic material for the formation of soil.
- Climate breaks the parent rock into small pieces.
- Vegetation: Plant and animal organisms help in the weathering of the rocks slowly but continuously
- Various forces of nature such as change in temperature, actions of running water, wind and glaciers, activities of decomposers, etc., contribute to the formation of soil.
- Chemical and organic changes take place in the soil.

42. Which geographical factors are responsible for the evolution of black soil? Why is it considered the most suitable for growing cotton? [2012]

**Ans :**

- Climatic conditions along with present rock material are important factors for making of black soil. The parent rock is volcanic rock.
- It is ideal for growing cotton because of the following reasons:
- It has capacity to hold moisture.
- It is rich in soil nutrients such as calcium carbonate and potash.
- Deep cracks in the soil help in aeration.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

43. Mention any two human activities which are responsible for the process of soil erosion. Explain the two types of soil erosion mostly observed in India? [2012]

**Ans :**

Two human activities which are responsible for the process of soil erosion are deforestation and overgrazing, mining, construction, etc.

Types of Soil Erosion :

- Gullies:** The running water cuts through the clayey soil and makes deep channels/gullies. The unfit land caused by gullies is called bad land or ravines.
- Sheet erosion:** water flows as a sheet over large areas down a slope. The top soil is washed away. This process is known as sheet erosion.

44. Differentiate between stock and reserve stating two points of difference. [2011]

**Ans :**

- Stock:** Materials, which have the potential to satisfy human beings but human do not have the appropriate technology to access these, are termed as stock. We do not have the required technical 'know-how' to use them for a specific purpose, e.g., water which is a compound of two inflammable gases hydrogen and oxygen and can be a rich source of energy. We do not know how to use them.
- Reserves:** These are subset of the stock. They can be put into use with existing know-how but their use has not been started. For e.g., river water is used as a source of hydroelectricity but to a limited extent. Thus, the water in the dams, forests, etc., are reserves which can be used in the future.

45. Explain the types of resources on the basis of



exhaustibility with the help of examples. [2011]

**Ans :**

- Renewable resources:** Resources which can be renewed or reproduced by mechanical, physical or chemical processes are known as renewable or replenishable resources, e.g., solar and wind energy, water, forests and wildlife, etc.
- Non-renewable resources:** These occur over very long geological times. Minerals and fossil fuels are examples of such resources. These resources take millions of years in their formation. Some of the resources like metals are recyclable and some of them such as fossil fuels cannot be recycled and get exhausted with their use.

46. What are the three stages of resource planning in India ?

**Ans :** [2012, 2011]

- Identification and inventory of resources across the regions of the country.
- Evolving a planning structure endowed with appropriate technology, skill and , institutional set up for implementing resource development plans.
- Match the resource development plans with overall national development plans.

47. Enumerate any three features of 'regur' soil. [2011]

**Ans :**

Feature of 'regur' soil :

- Regur soil is also known as black soil.
- It is ideal for growing cotton, so it is also known as 'black cotton soil'.
- It is made up of extremely fine clayey material.
- It is rich in soil nutrients, calcium carbonate, magnesium, potash and lime.
- It develops cracks in hot weather. It can hold moisture and is sticky when wet.

48. Describe any five distinct characteristics of 'Arid soils'. [2015]

**Ans :**

- Arid soils range from red to brown in colour.
- Sandy in texture and saline in nature.
- Evaporation is faster, soil lacks humus and moisture.
- Soil occupied by Kankar.
- Kankar restricts the infiltration of water.

49. Why is soil considered as a resource? Explain with five arguments. [2015]

**Ans :**

Soil is considered as a resource because :

- It is used to satisfy our needs.
- It is the most important renewable natural resource.
- It is the medium of plant growth.
- It supports different types of living organisms on the Earth.
- It is the base of our life.

50. What type of soil is found in the river deltas of the eastern coast? Give four main features of this type of

soil.

**Ans :**

[2013]

Alluvial soil is found in the entire northern plain. It is the most widely spread soil of India. Main features of alluvial soil:

- It is formed by the deposition of materials brought down by the Himalayan rivers.
- It is highly fertile.
- It consists of various proportions of sand, silt and clay.
- It is rich in potash, phosphoric acid and lime but deficient in organic matter.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

51. Explain resource planning. What are the steps involved in resource planning? [2014]

or

Why is resource planning essential in India? [2015]

or

What is resource planning? Why is resource planning essential? Explain it with three reasons. [2015]

**Ans :**

Resource planning is a procedure of proper utilisation of resources. Resource planning is important because :

- Resources in India are not evenly distributed. Some parts of the country are rich in one resource but deficient in other important resources which are essential. For example, Rajasthan is rich in solar and wind energy but lacks water resource. Jharkhand is rich in minerals and coal deposits but lacks industrialisation. This is the reason why resource planning is essential. An effective resource planning will help in effective use of the resources available in the environment.
- Secondly, most of the resources present in our environment are limited. Therefore, if these resources are not preserved or not used rationally we will be in great trouble. For example : Petrol is a limited resource and it cannot be renewed. Exhaustion of petrol will create huge chaos in the country as we are extensively dependent on the petrol.
- Thirdly, resource planning is important because it minimises the wastage or over utilisation of resources. The very first step of resource planning is to make a list of resources available in the environment. This helps us to assess which resources should be used and how much it should be used to prevent over utilisation and minimise wastage.

52. Provide a suitable classification for resources on the basis of ownership. Mention main features of any three types of such resources.

**Ans :**

[2014]

On the basis of ownership resources can be classified into the following categories :

- Individual resources :** Resources owned by a person or an individual are called individual resources. For example-land owned by farmers, and houses are individual resources.

- b. Community resources : Resources owned by a particular community or a society are called community owned resources. For example-Graveyard, grazing land, ponds, burial grounds and park are community owned resources.
- c. National resources : Resources owned by an individual nation are called national resources. For example -Government land, roads, canals and railways are national resources.
- d. International resources : Resources regulated or governed by an international body are called international resources. For example-Ocean and sea beyond 200 km of the exclusive economic zone belongs to open sea or ocean. No individual country can utilise these resources without the permission of international bodies.

53. Explain the resources on the basis of origin and exhaustibility.

**Ans :**

**Resources on the basis of origin :**

- a. Biotic resources : Resources obtained from the environment are called biotic resources. For example-trees, animals and insects.
- b. Abiotic resources : Resources obtain from non-living things present in our environment are termed as abiotic resources. For example-earth, air, water, metals, rocks, etc.

**Resources on the basis of exhaustibility :**

- a. Renewable resources : The resources which have the ability to renew them over period of time or can be reproduced by physical, chemical or mechanical processes are known as renewable resources. For example-solar and wind energy, water, forest and wildlife, etc.
- b. Non-renewable resources : Resources which cannot be renewed or reproduced by any physical, chemical or mechanical process are known as non-renewable resource. For example- water, wind, tidal energy, etc.

54. List the problems caused due to indiscriminate use of resources by human beings.

**Ans :**

Resources are essential for human survival. Initially, people believed that the resources are the free gift of nature. Therefore, they continuously exhausted the resources available in the environment without taking any preventive measures. As a matter of fact, they faced economic, social and ecological problems.

The major problems that cropped up due to over-exploitation, irrational consumption and indiscriminate use of resources are :

- a. Exhaustion of resources : Due to over exploitation and irrational consumption, the resources exhausted at a rapid pace leaving very little or nothing for the future generation.
- b. Concentration of resources : Concentration of resources in a few hands is also a major issue. The people with the maximum resources will use them for their own benefits leaving others empty handed. This will create a situation of have and have nots. This situation of have and have nots

is unfavourable for the growth of the country as a whole.

- c. Global ecological crisis : Global warming, depletion of ozone layer, population and land degradation are global ecological crises. This crisis situation is also an after effect of irrational or over utilisation of resources.

55. How do technical and economical developments led to more consumption of resources ?

**Ans :**

These days, technical and economical developments gain a colossal space. The government is also focusing more on technical and economical growth to make our country a fully developed country. In this process of technical and economical growth, the resources of our country are exhausting rapidly. Technological and economical developments have led to such rapid consumption of resources because of the following reasons :

- a. New and improved equipments are introduced with the development of technology, which ultimately lead to an increase in the use of natural resources.
- b. The technological advancement is attributed to the growth of a developing country. People of an economically developing nation consume more resources. Hence, we can safely say that an improvement in economic development of a nation will directly result in the increase of its people's consumption of resources.
- c. Development of new technologies is widely seen in developing economies. Due to economic development, the bright minds get an opportunity to experiment with their ideas. As a matter of fact, various materials are converted in to useful resources. This creates an atmosphere, which will see a steady increase in consumption of such available resources.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

56. 'Consumption of energy in all forms has been rising all over the country. There is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path of energy development and energy saving'. Suggest and explain any three measures to solve this burning problem.

**Ans :**

Energy is an essential requirement for economic development. The strategy of economic development that India has adopted since independence necessarily required increasing amount of energy consumption. As a result, consumption of energy in all forms has been rising. To take care of this concern, various measures that need to be adopted are as follows :

- a. We need to increase the use of renewable energy resources like solar, wind power, biogas, tidal energy and geothermal energy. This will decrease the dependence on non-renewable sources.
- b. We have to adopt a cautious approach for judicious use of our limited energy resources. For example, as a concerned citizen we can use public transport system in place of an individual vehicle.
- c. Another measure that needs to be adopted is promotion of energy conservation, e.g., switching off electrical devices when not in use, using power saving devices. Thus, consumption of energy in all forms has been rising all over the country.

**57.** What is meant by 'Land Resource' ?

**Ans :**

We live on land and it satisfies our needs in all the possible ways. Land resource, thus is, of much importance for us which includes forests, mountains, plains, plateaus and islands. These support natural vegetation, wild life, economic activities, and transport and communication systems. Therefore, it is necessary for us to use these resources in a wise manner and with careful planning, we should develop holistic and ecological approach towards economic development without compromising the ability of resources to future generations to meet their needs. Though we have the right to meet our present needs by consuming natural resources, we should not deprive the future generations from it.

**58.** Explain land use pattern in India and why the land under forest not increased much since 1960-61.

**Ans :**

Land in India has been divided into different categories with reference to usage. Different categories of land are:

- a. Farming land which is used for farming.
- b. Forest land which comes under forest area
- c. Land meant for grazing
- d. Non-farming land which is used for industrialization
- e. Waste lands, such as rocky areas and deserts

The irrational use of forest land has degraded the available land area, and has made conservation of forests difficult. Human actions such as deforestation, mining and quarrying have contributed to the slow growth rate of forests. Thus, land under forest has increased by only about 4% since 1960-61.

- a. The use of natural resources has been increased with the development of the technology in the country.
- b. Over utilisation of soil due to development in technology.
- c. Growth in the quality of production and better services to the people.
- d. Improvement in the process of mining.
- e. Demand for more resources due to urbanisation.

**59.** What do you understand by the term 'land degradation' ? Which human activities lead to land degradation ? What are the measures to solve the problems of land degradation ?

**Ans :**

Land resource is fixed and cannot be increased. Land resource has been used since the ancient time. This continuous usage of land over a long period of time, without taking necessary steps to conserve and manage it has resulted in land degradation. As a matter of fact, the quality of the land has become inferior due to regular loss of fertility and irregular usage.

Human activities have also contributed towards land degradation. There are :

- a. Deforestation i.e., cutting down of forests.
- b. Over grazing.
- c. Mining i.e., extraction of valuable minerals from the soil.
- d. Mineral processing like grinding of limestone.
- e. Faulty methods of cultivation and over-irrigation.

These damages can be prevented with the help of these measures :

- a. Afforestation and proper management of grazing.
- b. Plantation of shelter and stabilisation of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes in windy and arid areas like the deserts of Rajasthan.
- c. Proper management of wasteland and control of mining activities.
- d. Proper discharge and disposal of industrial effluents and waste after treatment in industrial and suburban areas.

**60.** How can the problem of land degradation be solved ?

**Ans :**

Land degradation has become a major problem today. We have shared our land with the past generations and will have to do with the future generations. There are many ways to solve the problem of land degradation. Afforestation and proper management of grazing can help in solving the problem of land degradation. Planting shelter belts of plants, control on over grazing, stabilisation of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes are also some of the methods to check land degradation. Proper management of waste lands, control of mining activities, proper discharge and disposal of industrial effluents and wastes after treatment can reduce land and water degradation in industrial and suburban areas.

**61.** What is the purpose of 'Land Utilisation' ?

**Ans :**

Land resources are used for the following purposes :

- a. Forests.
- b. Land not available for cultivation :
  - (1) Barren and waste land.
  - (2) Land put to non-agricultural uses, e.g., buildings, roads, factories, etc.
- c. Other uncultivated land :
  - (1) Permanent pastures and grazing land.
  - (2) Land under miscellaneous tree crops groves.
  - (3) Cultural waste land left uncultivated for more than 5 years.
- d. Fallow lands:
  - (1) Current fallow land left without cultivation for one or less than one agricultural year.
  - (2) Other than current fallow land, left uncultivated for the past one to five years.
- e. Net sown area, sown more than once in an

agricultural year plus net sown area is known as gross cropped area.

of the slopes. The effect will be poor soils on the slopes, and richer deposits at the foot of the slopes.

62. What are the main types of soil found in India ? Which type of soil is the most widespread and important soil of India ? Describe in detail about this soil type.

**Ans :**

The main types soil found in various parts of India are as follows :

- Alluvial soil
- Black soil
- Red and yellow soil
- Laterite soil
- Arid or Desert soil
- Forest and Mountainous soil.

**Alluvial Soil :**

Alluvial soil is the most fertile and extensively found soil in India. This type of soil is found near the river banks and is deposited by the rivers of India. The Indus, the Ganga and the Brahmaputra are the three main rivers which are responsible for its deposition and have created the entire northern plains. These soils also extend in Rajasthan and Gujarat through a narrow corridor. Alluvial soil is also found in the eastern coastal plains particularly in the deltas of the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri rivers. Alluvial soil is more common in pediment plains such as Duars, Chos and Terai.

Alluvial soil is very fertile because it contains potash, phosphoric acid and lime in adequate amount. This is why the areas where alluvial soil is found are densely populated, for example, the northern plains and the eastern coastal plain are densely populated and the most productive regions of India. The mineral content of the alluvial soil makes it ideal for the growth of paddy, wheat, other cereals and pulses and sugarcane. The alluvial soil consists of various proportions of sand, silt and clay. They are coarse in the upper reaches of the river valley especially near the break of slope and in pediment plains like Duars, Chos and Terai. Every year during annual floods alluvial soils are renewed. The Alluvial soil is of two types-Khadar and Bangar.

63. What are the four main factors which help in the formation of soil ?

**Ans :**

The main factors that help in soil formation are :

- Parent rock : It influences the colour and texture of the soil. The mineral content of the soil also depends on the parent rock from which it is formed.
- Climate : It influences the rate and types of weathering and erosion of the rocks. Weathering of the parent rocks due to climatic factors and natural forces leads to disintegration of rocks. Subsequently, this leads to the formation of soil.
- Time : It determines the maturity of the soil. Soil is a living system. It takes millions of years to form soil upto a few centimetres in depth.
- Relief: This refers to the landscape position and the slopes. Steep and long slopes mean water will run down faster and potentially erode the surfaces

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE



# CHAPTER 2.4

## Agriculture

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Name the crops for which India is the largest producer in the world.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Fruits and vegetables, oilseeds and pulses

2. By which name is specialized cultivation of fruits and vegetables known?

**Ans :** [CBSE S.P. 2016-17]

Horticulture.

3. Describe 'Jhumming cultivation' in one sentence.

**Ans :** [CBSE S.P. 2016-17]

'Slash and burn' cultivation in North- Eastern states of India.

4. Which is the leading coffee producer state in India?

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]

Karnataka.

5. By which other name is 'slash and burn' agriculture known?

[CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Primitive subsistence farming/jhumming

(Any one)

6. In which country the 'slash and burn' agriculture is known as 'Roca'?

[CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Brazil.

7. Hoe, dao, digging sticks are associated with which type of farming?

[CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Primitive subsistence farming.

8. Which crop is grown with the onset monsoons and are harvested in the month of September and October?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2000]

Kharif.

9. Which crop is the major crop of rabi? [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Wheat

10. Name some rabi crops. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Wheat, barley, peas, gram and mustard.

11. Name the two important wheat growing zones in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The Ganga-Satluj plains in the north-west and black soil region of the Deccan.

12. In which system of agriculture, a single crop is grown on a large area? [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Plantation agriculture.

13. Name some plantation crops. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Tea, coffee, rubber, sugarcane and banana.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

14. Which type of farming is intensive subsistence farming? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Labour intensive farming.

15. Which two areas of India produce oranges mainly?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Nagpur in Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh.

16. Which country is the first largest producer of rice?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2017]

China,

17. India is the largest producer as well as consumer of which agricultural product in the world?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Pulses.

18. Which crop is used both as food and fodder?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Maize.

19. Which crop is known as golden fibre?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Jute.

20. Which state is the largest producer of ragi?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Karnataka.

21. In which type of soil does maize grow well?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
Old alluvial.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

22. "Dense and efficient network of transport is a pre-requisite for local and national development". Analyse the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

- The pace of development of country depends upon the production of goods and services as well as their movement over space. Therefore efficient means of transport are pre-requisite for national development.
- Today, the world has been converted into a large village with the help of efficient and fast moving transport system.
- The trades from local to international levels have added to the vitality of our economy with the help of dense and efficient network of transport in the country. It has enriched our life and added substantially to growing amenities and facilities for the comforts of life.

23. Which are the two main cropping seasons in India? Mention their growing and harvesting periods.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The two main cropping seasons are Rabi and Kharif:

- Rabi crops are sown in winter from October to December and harvested in summer from April to June.
- Kharif crops are sown with the onset of monsoon in different parts of the country and harvested in September-October.

24. What are the growing conditions required for the main staple food crop of India? Mention the main growing regions. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Growing conditions required for rice:

- High temperature (above 25°C). It is a Kharif crop.
- High humidity with annual rainfall above 100 cm.

Main growing regions: Northern plains, northeastern India, Coastal areas, deltaic plains and river valleys.

25. Describe the institutional and technical changes introduced in the field of agriculture in India in the recent years. [CBSE 2014]

or

What were the attributes of the comprehensive land development programme initiated in India in the decade 1980 and 1990. [CBSE2015]

or

Describe any three technological and institutional reforms made in the field of agriculture in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

- Land reforms: collectivization, consolidation of holdings, cooperation and abolition of zamindari.
- Agricultural reforms: Green revolution and White

revolution.

- Land development programmes : Provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, cyclone etc., establishment of Grameen banks, Cooperative societies and banks for providing loans.
- Issuing of Kissan Credit Card and Personal Accident Insurance Scheme, etc.
- Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers on radio and TV.

26. Explain any two geographical conditions required for the cultivation of pulses. Name any two important pulses producing states. [CBSE2013]

or

Why the pulses are mostly grown in rotation with other crops? Name any two major pulse producing states?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Pulses are mostly grown in rotation with other crops because:

- Pulses need less moisture and survive even in dry conditions.
- Being leguminous crops, all these crops

Major pulse producing states are : Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh.

27. Give an account of oilseeds in India. State the importance of groundnut and name the states where it is grown. [CBSE 2013]

or

Describe the uses of oilseeds? Which state is the largest producer of groundnut?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Importance:

- Are edible and used as cooking medium.
- Used as raw material in production of soap, cosmetics and ointment.
- India-largest producer.

Groundnut:

- Kharif crop.
- Accounts half of the total oilseed production.
- State: Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Gujarat and Maharashtra.

### FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

28. "The Government of India has introduced various institutional and technological reforms to improve agriculture in the 1980s and 1990s". Support this statement with examples. [CBSE 2018]

or

Compare intensive subsistence farming with that of commercial farming practiced in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

- In the 1980s and 1990s, a comprehensive land development programme was initiated, which included both institutional and technical reforms.
- Provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, cyclone, fire and disease establishment of Grameen banks for providing loan facilities to the farmers at lower rates of interest were some important steps in this direction.
- Kissan Credit Card (KCC), personal accident

insurance scheme are some other schemes introduced by the government of India for the benefit of the farmers.

- d. Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers were introduced on the radio and television.
- e. The government also announces minimum support price, remunerative and procurement prices for important crops to check the exploitation of farmers by speculators and middlemen.

or

	Intensive Subsistence Farming	Commercial Farming
1.	This type of farming is practised in areas of high population pressure on land.	In this type of farming single crop is grown on a large area.
2.	It is labour-intensive farming, where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production.	The main characteristic of this type of farming is the use of higher doses of modern inputs e.g. HYV seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides in order to obtain higher productivity.
3.	Though the 'right of inheritance leading to the division of land among successive generation has rendered land-holding size. Uneconomical the farmers continue to take maximum output from the limited land in the absence of alternative source of livelihood.	In commercial farming plantation has an interface of agriculture and industry. It covers large tracts of land using capital intensive inputs, with the help of migrant labourers.
4.	In this type of farming crops are grown for family consumption.	Crops are mainly grown for the market or used in industry as raw material.
5.	Rice, wheat, maize, are mainly grown with the help of traditional tools.	Tea, coffee, sugarcane, rubber, banana etc. are grown with the help of modern inputs.

29. What are millets? Give brief description of the climatic conditions and producing states of the millets grown in India. [CBSE S.R 2016-17]

**Ans :**

Millets are coarse grains but have high nutritional value e.g., ragi-rich in iron, calcium.

- a. Jowar-Rain fed crops mostly grown in moist area. States producing-Maharashtra, Karnataka and MP.
- b. Bajra-grown well on sandy soils and shallow black soil. States producing- Rajasthan, Maharashtra, Gujarat, Haryana and UP.

- c. Ragi-grown well in dry region on red, black, sandy and loamy soils.

States producing-Tamil Nadu, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand and Sikkim.

30. Which crop is known as the 'golden fibre'? Explain any two geographical conditions essential for the cultivation of this crop. Mention its any four uses. [CBSE S.R 2016-17]

**Ans :**

- a. Jute is called the golden fibre.
- b. Geographical conditions:
- c. Grows well in drained fertile soil of the flood plains where the soil is renewed every year.
- d. High temperature is required during the time of growth.

Uses: Can be used to manufacture gunny bags, mats, ropes, yam, carpets and other artefacts.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

31. Name any four oilseeds produced in India. Explain the importance of oilseeds in our day-to-day life.

**Ans :**

[CBSE S.R 2016-17]

- (i) Groundnut (ii) Mustard
- (iii) Coconut (iv) Sesamun
- (v) Soyabean, sunflower; etc.

Importance of oilseeds:

Most of these are edible in the form of oil. Used as raw material for manufacturing paints, varnishes, soaps, perfumes etc, oil cake is used as cattle feed. Oil cake is also used as a fertiliser.

32. Mention any two geographical conditions required for the growth of maize crop in India. Describe any three factors which have contributed to increase in maize production.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2016]

Geographical conditions required for the growth of maize crop in India:

- a. It is a kharif crop which requires temperature between 21°C to 27°C.
- b. It grows well in alluvial soil.

Use of modern inputs such as HYV seeds, fertilisers and irrigation have contributed to the increasing production of maize.

33. Explain any three geographical conditions required for the growth of rice in India. How is it possible to grow rice in areas of less rainfall? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2015]

Three geographical conditions for the growth of rice:

- a. It requires high temperature, (above 25°C).
- b. Annual rainfall above 100 cm.

c. High humidity

It is possible to grow rice in areas of less rainfall with the help of irrigation in Punjab and Haryana.

- 34.** Why has the agriculture sector in India got a major setback in spite of increase in the GDP growth rate? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

- More and more land is used for construction of factories, warehouses and shelters which reduced the land under cultivation.
- Soil gets degraded by the use of pesticides, fertilizers, over irrigation, etc., which leads to water logging and salinity.
- Today Indian farmers are facing a big challenge from international competition.
- Our government is reducing the public investment in agriculture, subsidy on fertilizers have decreased.
- Reduction in import duties on agricultural products have proved detrimental to agriculture in the country.

- 35.** What are the climatic conditions required for the growth of rice? [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Climatic conditions required for the growth of rice:

- It is a Kharif crop which requires high temperature (above 25°C).
- High humidity with annual rainfall above 100 cm.
- In the areas of less rainfall, it grows with the help of irrigation.
- It is grown in the plains of north and north-eastern India, coastal areas and the deltaic regions.
- Development of dense network of canal irrigation and tubewells have made it possible to grow rice in areas of less rainfall such as Punjab and Haryana.

- 36.** Suggest any five measures to enhance the agricultural production in India. [CBSE 2014]

or

Explain any five institutional and technical reforms brought by the government to improve the condition of Indian Agriculture. [CBSE 2012,2011,2010]

or

Describe any five steps taken by the government of India to increase the productivity of agriculture in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- Land reforms: Collectivisation, consolidation of holdings, cooperation and abolition of zamindari.
- Agricultural reforms: Green revolution and White revolution.
- Land development programmes: Provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, cyclone, etc, establishment of Grameen banks, Cooperative societies and banks for providing loans.
- Issuing of Kissan Credit Card and Personal Accident Insurance Scheme, etc.
- Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers on radio and TV.
- Government announces Minimum Support Price (MSP) and remunerative and procurement prices to check exploitation.

- The government provides HYV seeds and fertilisers.
- Government provides technical assistance and training for farmers.
- Soil testing facilities, cold storage and transportation facilities are provided by government for farmers.

- 37.** Define plantation agriculture. Explain any four characteristics of plantation agriculture.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2012]

Plantation Agriculture: It is a type of commercial farming practised in tropical and sub-tropical regions. It was introduced by the British in India.

Characteristics:

- A single crop is grown over large area.
- It is capital intensive and done with migrant labour.
- All produce is used as raw material in industries such as tea, coffee, rubber, sugarcane, banana, etc.
- Plantation has interface of agriculture and industry both.

- 38.** "Wheat and rice farming in India are fairly different from each other". Support the statement with five suitable examples. [CBSE 2012]

or

Wheat and rice farming in India are fairly different from each other. Explain.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2011]

	Basis of difference	Weat	Rice
1.	Rainfall	50-75 cm	Above 100 cm
2.	Temperature	15° cm	Above 25° cm
3.	Area wise Distribution	North and North-west	Planes of north and north-west part of the country
4.	Type of Crop	Rabi	Kharif
5.	M a j o r Producer	Punjab	West Bengal

- 39.** Distinguish between primitive subsistence farming and commercial farming by stating five points of distinction.

**Ans :**

[CBSE2012]

	Subsistence farming	Commercial farming
1.	It is practised on small patches.	It is practised on a large scale.
2.	Farming depends on Irrigation	Irrigation facilities are available.
3.	Primitive tools are used.	Modern technology is used.
4.	Production is low.	Production is high.
5.	No costly fertilisers are used.	Chemical fertilisers are used.
6.	Family members provide labour.	Labourers are hired.



	Subsistence farming	Commercial farming
7.	Only cereals and other food crops are grown	Commercial crops are grown.

40. Describe any four geographical conditions required for the growth of tea. Mention the two major tea producing states of South India. [CBSE 2012]

or

Name the important beverage crop introduced by the British in India. Explain the geographical conditions needed for its cultivation. Write any two important states where it is grown.

or

In which agricultural production, India is the leading producer as well as exporter in world? Describe the geographical requirements for its growth and development. [CBSE 2012]

or

What are the soil type, climatic conditions and rainfall conditions required for the cultivation of tea? Write two states of India where tea grows.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

- Tea: Grows well in tropical and sub-tropical climates.
- Soil type: Deep and fertile, well-drained soil, rich in humus and organic matters.
- Climate: Warm and moist, frost-free climate throughout the year.
- Rainfall: Frequent showers throughout the year.
- Two states: Assam, West Bengal, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Andhra Pradesh, Meghalaya and Tripura.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

41. Describe four geographical conditions required for the growth of sugarcane. Name two major sugarcane producing states of North India. [CBSE 2012]

or

What geographical conditions are required for the cultivation of sugarcane? Name two largest producing states of sugarcane.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011,2010]

Geographical conditions required for the growth of sugarcane in India:

- It is a tropical as well as sub-tropical crop so it requires a hot and humid climate with a temperature of 24°C to 27°C.
- It requires an annual rainfall between 75 to 100 cm.
- It can be grown on a variety of soils.
- Major sugarcane producing states of North
- India are : Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Punjab and Haryana.

42. Which are the two major cotton producing states of North India ? Describe four geographical conditions required for the growth of cotton. [CBSE 2012]

or

Describe the geographical conditions required for the cultivation of cotton.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Haryana and Uttar Pradesh are the two major cotton producing states of North India.

**Geographical conditions required for the cultivation of cotton:**

- It grows well in drier parts of the black cotton soil of the Deccan plateau.
- It requires high temperature.
- It requires light rainfall or irrigation.
- It requires 21 frost free days and bright sunshine for its growth.

43. Explain Rubber cultivation in India under the following heads:

- Importance
- Geographical conditions
- Producing states.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011,12]

- Importance: Many industries depend upon rubber as their raw material especially transport industry.
- Geographical conditions:
  - It is an equatorial crop, but under special conditions it is also grown in tropical and sub tropical areas.
  - It requires moist and humid climate with rainfall of more than 200 cm and temperature above 25°C.
- Rubber producing states are Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andaman and Nicobar Islands and Garo hills of Meghalaya.

44. Explain any four features of primitive subsistence agriculture in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE2011]

Features of primitive subsistence agriculture in India are:

- It is practised on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools.
- Tools which are used are basically traditional tools such as hoe, dao and digging stick.
- This type of agriculture totally depends upon monsoon.
- When the soil fertility decreases, the farmers shift to another plot of land.

45. What is intensive subsistence farming? Write three features of intensive farming. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Intensive subsistence farming is practised in areas of high population pressure on land. In this type of farming, the agricultural production is increased by using high doses of biochemical inputs and better agricultural inputs.

Features of intensive farming:

- High yielding variety (HYV) seeds and modern chemical inputs and irrigation are used to increase the production.
- The per hectare yield is very high.

c. More than one crop is cultivated during a year.

46. Compare the geographical conditions required for the production of cotton and jute. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

	Cotton	Jute
1.	Cotton requires more than 21°C of temperature	Jute requires 30° temperature.
2.	Rainfall: 50-100 cm	Rainfall: Near about 150 cm.
3.	Frost free days are must during Picking days	Hot and humid climate is required.
4.	Loamy and black soil is required.	Well-drained fertile loamy soil is required.
5.	Mainly grown in Maharashtra and Gujarat.	Grown in eastern states of the country.

47. Why is agriculture called the mainstay of Indian economy?

or

What is the importance of agriculture in Indian economy?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013]

- Agriculture is the mainstay of Indian economy because about 67% of our population depends directly or indirectly on agriculture.
  - It provides raw materials to the industries.
  - India earns foreign exchange by exporting agricultural products.
  - It contributes about 29% to the gross domestic product.
  - It provides food to over 1250 million population.
48. Why has Indian agriculture started a decline in the trend of food production? How can we overcome this problem?

[CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Indian agriculture started a decline in the trend of food production because:

- More and more land is used for construction of factories, warehouses and shelters have reduced the land under cultivation.
- Soil gets degraded by the use of pesticides, fertilizers, over-irrigation, etc. which leads to water logging and salinity.

Remedial Measures:

- Use of agricultural techniques which are environmentally sustainable.
- Use of biotechnology in modifying different crops and increase the yield per hectare. It reduces dependence on insecticides and also require less water.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

File Revision Date : 1 July 2019

CBSE Previous Year Exams Questions Exam 2019-2020

CLASS : 10th

SUB : Social Science

Unit 2 : Contemporary India - II

For 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank

visit [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) or whatsapp at 8905629969

# CHAPTER 2.5

## Mineral and Energy Resources

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. What is a mineral? [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Mineral is a homogeneous naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.

2. Why are there a wide range of colours, hardness, crystal forms, lustre and density found in minerals?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

The ranges found in minerals are due to physical and chemical conditions.

3. How do minerals occur in igneous and metamorphic rocks? [Delhi 2016]

**Ans :**

In igneous and metamorphic rocks, minerals may occur in cracks, crevices, faults and joints.

4. How do minerals occur in sedimentary rocks?

**Ans :** [Delhi 2016, 2015]

In sedimentary rocks, minerals occur in beds or layers. They have been formed as a result of deposition, accumulation and concentration in horizontal strata.

5. Name the minerals formed in beds and layers.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Coal, and some forms of iron ore.

6. How does mining affect the health of miners?

**Ans :** [Foreign 2016]

The dust and the noxious fumes inhaled by the miners makes them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.

7. How did the Bailadila iron-ore field get its name?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

The Bailadila hills look like the hump of an ox, hence Bailadila iron-ore field get its name.

8. How is iron-ore transported from Kudremukh mines to a port near Mangaluru?

**Ans :** [Foreign 2016]

Iron-ore is transported as slurry through pipelines.

9. Why is copper mainly used in electrical cables and electronic industries?

**Ans :** [Sample Paper 2016]

It is used in electrical cables as it is malleable, ductile and a good conductor of heat and electricity.

10. Why aluminium metal has great importance?

**Ans :** [All India 2016]

It has great importance because it combines the strength of metals such as iron with extreme lightness

and also with good conductivity and great malleability.

11. How are 'Gobar Gas Plants' beneficial to the farmers?

**Ans :** [All India 2016]

'Gobar Gas Plants' are beneficial to the farmers in the form of energy and improved quality of manure.

12. Which rock consists of single mineral only?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Limestone.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

13. What is hematite? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Hematite ore is the most important industrial iron ore in terms of the quantity used.

14. Why should the use of cattle cake as fuel be discouraged?

**Ans :** [All India 2015]

The use of cattle cake as fuel should be discouraged because it creates pollution. It consumes most valuable manure which could be used in agriculture.

15. What are placer deposits? [All India 2010]

**Ans :**

Certain mineral deposits that occur in sands of valley floors and the base of the hills as alluvial deposits are called placer deposits.

16. Which state of India is the largest producer of Bauxite?

**Ans :** [All India 2010]

Odisha is the largest producer of Bauxite in India.

17. Name the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India.

**Ans :** [All India 2010]

Coal is the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India.

18. Which is the highest petroleum-producing area in India?

**Ans :** [Foreign 2010]

Mumbai High is the highest petroleum- producing area in India.

19. Name the gulf that provides ideal conditions for utilising tidal energy in India. [Foreign 2010]

**Ans :**

Gulf of Kambhat and Gulf of Kutch in Gujarat provide ideal conditions for utilising tidal energy in India.

20. Which is the oldest oil producing state of ' India?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Assam.

21. How power resources are classified?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Power resources may be broadly categorised into conventional and non-conventional resources.

22. What are conventional sources of energy?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

Conventional sources of energy generally nonrenewable sources of energy which have been in common use for a long time. Example: firewood, coal, natural gas, etc.

23. What is biogas energy?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

Bio gas is produced from shrubs, farm waste, animal and human wastes.

24. Name any one nuclear power station found in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2010]

Kalpakkam in Tamil Nadu.

25. At which place in India, experimental project for geothermal energy has been Set-up?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2008]

Manikaran.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

26. How is mining activity hazardous? Explain. [CBSE 2016]

or

How is the mining activity injurious to the health of the miners and environment? Explain. [Delhi 2015]

or

"Mining affects health and environment both." Comment. [CBSE 2012]

or

How is mining activity hazardous? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

The mining activity is injurious to the health of the miners and environment as:

- The dust and noxious fumes inhaled by miners make them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.
- The risk of collapsing mine roofs.
- Inundation on coal mines are a constant threat to miners.
- The water sources in the region get contaminated due to mining.
- Dumping of waste and slurry leads to degradation of land, soil and increase in stream and river

pollution.

27. Why is mica considered the most important mineral in electric and electronic industries? Give three reasons. [CBSE 2016]

or

How is mica one of the most indispensable minerals ? Explain any three points. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Mica is:

- Excellent dielectric in strength and has low power loss factor.
- It has insulating properties and resistance to high voltage.
- Most indispensable mineral used in electric and electronic industries.

28. Which are the two main minerals used to obtain nuclear energy? Name any two states where these minerals are found. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Nuclear or atomic energy is obtained by altering the structure of an atom; When such an alteration is made, much energy is released in the form of heat and this is used to generate electric power.

- Uranium and Thorium are used for generating atomic or nuclear power.
- They are available in Jharkhand and Rajasthan.

29. "How is geo-thermal energy produced ? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The earth grows progressively hotter with increasing depth. Where the geothermal gradient is high, high temperatures are found at shallow depths. Groundwater in such areas absorbs heat from the rocks and becomes hot.

It is so hot that when it rises to the earth's surface, it turns into steam. This steam is used to drive turbines to generate electricity.

30. Name the non-metallic mineral which can split easily into thin sheets. Mention its uses. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Mica is the non-metallic mineral which can be split easily into thin sheets.

Mica is used in:

- Electric and electronic industries: Mica is used in these industries due to its excellent dielectric strength, low power loss factor, insulating properties and resistance to high voltage.
- Plastic industry uses mica as an extender and filler.

31. Why is conservation of minerals important? How can we conserve minerals? [CBSE 2014, 2012]

**Ans :**

Conservation of minerals is important for the following reasons:

- Minerals are exhaustible.
- They are limited.
- Minerals have manifold uses.
- Growth of industrialisation has accelerated the extraction of minerals.

We can conserve minerals by making an efficient



use of them and using recyclable sources of energy wherever possible.

- 32.** Why is energy required for all activities ? How can energy be generated? [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

- Energy is a basic requirement for economic development.
- Every sector of the national economy needs input of energy.
- Consumption of energy in all forms has been steadily rising all over the country.
- Rising prices of oil and gas and their potential shortage have raised uncertainties about the security of energy supply in future.

Energy can be generated from fuel minerals like coal, petroleum, natural gas, uranium and from electricity.

- 33.** What are the two main ways of generating electricity? How are they different from each other? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

	Thermal Electricity	H y d r o Electricity
1.	It is obtained by using coal, petroleum and natural gas.	It is produced from water.
2.	It is a non-renewable resource.	It is a renewable.
3.	It causes pollution.	It does not cause pollution.
4.	It is expensive in the long run.	It is cheaper in the long run.

- 34.** "Natural gas is considered an environment friendly fuel." Explain the statement in two points.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Natural gas is used as a source of energy as well as an industrial raw material.

- It can be transported easily through pipelines.
- Pipelines have helped in setting up fertilizer plants and power plants on its way.
- Natural gas is a clean source of energy.
- It is an environment friendly fuel because of the low carbon emission.

- 35.** Name the mineral ore from which aluminium is extracted. Why is it gaining importance? Give its distribution in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- Bauxite.
- Aluminium is gaining importance because of its extreme lightness, good conductivity and great malleability. It combines the strength of metals such as Iron.
- It is mainly found in Amarkantak Plateau, Maikal Hills and the plateau region of Bilaspur-Katni. Koraput district in Odisha has large deposits. Odisha is the largest bauxite producing state. Others are Gujarat, Maharashtra and Jharkhand.

- 36.** Explain any three different forms in which minerals

generally occur.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- Minerals occur in the form of veins and lodes (In igneous and metamorphic rocks).
- In sedimentary rocks, a number of minerals occur in beds and layers.
- As residual mass of weathered material.
- As alluvial deposits in ocean waters.

- 37.** Describe any three important uses of coal as a source of energy. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Importance of coal as a source of energy in India are:

- Coal is the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India.
- It provides a substantial part of the nation's energy needs.
- It is used for power generation.
- It supplies energy to industry as well as for domestic needs.

- 38.** Why is it essential to use renewable sources of energy?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- Non-renewable sources are going to exhaust such as coal, petrol, natural gas etc. They can cause environmental pollution therefore, we have to use 'renewable resources.
- India has abundance of solar energy, wind, water and biomass.
- Rising prices of oil and gas and their shortage have raised uncertainties about energy resources in the future.

- 39.** Describe any three non-conventional sources of energy.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Non-conventional sources of energy are:

- Solar Energy:** India is a tropical country. It has enormous possibilities of trapping solar energy. Photovoltaic technology converts sunlight directly into electricity. Solar energy is rapidly becoming popular in rural and remote areas.
- Wind Energy:** India now ranks as a 'wind super power' in the world. The largest wind farm cluster is located in Tamil Nadu from Nagercoil to Madurai. Apart from these, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Gujarat, Kerala, Maharashtra and Lakshadweep have important wind farms. Nagercoil and Jaisalmer are well-known for effective use of wind energy in the country.
- Biogas:** Shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste are used to produce biogas for domestic consumption in rural areas. Biogas plants using cattle dung are known as 'Gobar Gas Plants' in rural India. These provide twin benefits to the farmer in the form of energy and improved quality of manure.

- 40.** Which are the potential sources of biogas? State any four benefits of biogas. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Potential sources of biogas are: Shrubs, farm wastes, animal waste, human waste, etc.

Four benefits of biogas are:

- Its calorific value is high.
- It burns without smoke, causing no pollution.
- It is the cheapest gaseous fuel.
- Biogas plants provide twin benefits to the farmer in the form of energy and improved quality of manure.

41. Explain three factors that make mineral extractions commercially viable. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

- The minerals content of the ore must be in sufficient concentration.
- The type of formation or structure in which they are found determines the relative cases with which mineral ores may be mined.
- The mineral should be close to the market so that the transportation cost is low.

42. What are the uses of copper? Name the two leading copper producing states of India. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Uses of copper:

- In manufacturing electrical cables.
- In electronic industries.
- In chemical industries.

The two leading copper producing states of India are Madhya Pradesh and Rajasthan.

43. What are 'placer deposits'? Give examples of minerals found in such deposits. [CBSE 2010]

**Ans :**

- Certain minerals may occur as alluvial deposits in sands of valley floors and base of hills. These deposits are called 'placer deposits'.
- They generally contain minerals which are not corroded by water.
- Gold, silver, tin and platinum are examples of some important minerals found in 'placer deposits'.

## Two MARKS QUESTIONS

44. Explain the importance of conservation of minerals. Highlight any three measures to conserve them.

[Foreign 2016]

or

Why is conservation of mineral resources essential? Explain any three methods to conserve them.

[CBSE 2015, 2014]

**Ans :**

Reasons for Conservation:

- The strong dependence of industry and agriculture upon minerals.
- The process of mineral formation is slow.
- They are non-renewable.

Methods to conserve:

- Minerals should be used in a planned and sustainable manner.
- Improved technology needs to be constantly evolved to allow use of low grade ore at low cost.
- Recycling of metals using scrap metals.
- Wastage in the mining and processing should be

minimised.

45. Highlight the importance of petroleum. Explain the occurrence of petroleum in India. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Importance of Petroleum:

- Petroleum is the major energy source in India.
- Provides fuel for heat and lighting.
- Provides lubricant for machinery.
- Provides raw material for a number of manufacturing industries.
- Petroleum refineries act as nodal industry for synthetic textile, fertilizer and chemical industries.

Its occurrence:

- Most of the petroleum occurrences in India are associated with anticlines and fault traps.
- In regions of folding, anticline or domes, it occurs where oil is trapped in the crest of the upfold.
- Petroleum is also found in fault traps between porous and non-porous rocks.

46. "Which minerals are used to obtain nuclear energy ? Name all the six nuclear power stations of India.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2016]

The minerals which are used to obtain this energy are:

- Uranium and (ii) Thorium.

The six nuclear power stations of India are

- Narora nuclear power station
- Kakrapar nuclear power station.
- Tarapur nuclear power station.
- Kaiga nuclear power station.
- Kalpakkam nuclear power station.
- Rawat Bhata nuclear power station.

47. "Conservation of minerals is the need of the hour". Support the statement with five facts.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2016, 2015]

Conservation of minerals is the need of the hour:

- Minerals are considered to be the backbone of the economy.
- Industry and agriculture depend on mineral deposits.
- The substances manufactured from them also depend on mineral deposits.
- Total volume of workable mineral deposits is very less-only 1% of the earth's crust.
- Mineral resources are being consumed rapidly, and minerals require millions of years to be created and concentrated.
- The geological processes of mineral ; formation are so slow that the rates of replenishment are infinitely small in comparison to the present rates of consumption.
- Minerals resources are finite and non-renewable.
- The rich mineral deposits of our country are extremely valuable but short-lived possessions.

48. There is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path of energy development. Give two broad measures for it. As concerned citizens, how can you help to conserve energy?

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2016]

Twin planks/measures:

- Promotion of energy conservation.

- (ii) Increased use of renewable energy sources. As concerned citizens we can do our bit by:
  - (i) Using public transport systems instead of individual vehicles.
  - (ii) Switching off electricity when not in use.
  - (iii) Using power-saving devices.
  - (iv) Using non-conventional sources of energy.

**49.** “There is a pressing need to use renewable energy resources.” Justify the statement with suitable arguments.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2016]

Need to use renewable energy resources are:

- (i) The growing consumption of energy has resulted in the country becoming increasingly dependent on fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas.
- (ii) Rising prices of oil and gas and their potential shortages have raised uncertainties about the security of energy supply in future.
- (iii) Has serious repercussions on the growth of the national economy.
- (iv) Increasing use of fossil fuels also causes serious environmental problems.
- (v) Hence, there is a pressing need to use renewable energy sources like solar energy, wind, tidal, biomass and energy from waste material.

**50.** Which is the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India? Assess the importance of its different forms.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Abundantly available fossil fuel in India is coal. Importance of its different forms are:

- a. Peat has low carbon and high moisture content and low heating capacity
- b. Lignite is a low grade brown coal which is soft with high moisture content. It is used for generating electricity.
- c. Bituminous is the most popular coal of commercial use. It has a special value for smelting iron in blast furnaces.
- d. Anthracite is the highest quality hard coal.

**51.** Why is energy needed? How can we conserve energy resources? Explain. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Energy is required for all activities. It is needed to cook, to provide light and heat, to propel vehicles and to drive machinery in industries.

To conserve energy resources:

- 1. Need to develop a sustainable path of energy development, i.e., energy development but not at the cost of environment or needs of future generation.
- 2. Judicious use of limited energy resources.
- 3. Wastage of minerals should be minimised.
- 4. Modern technology should be used for the exploitation of energy resources.
- 5. Export of energy resources should be minimised.
- 6. Use of substitutes in order to save energy resources.
- 7. Encourage recycling of energy resources.

**52.** “How can solar energy solve the energy problem to some extent in India? Give your opinion.[CBSE 2015]

or

Why is solar energy fast becoming popular in rural

and remote areas of India? Explain. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

- a. India is a tropical country therefore it receives sunlight in abundance throughout the year.
- b. Solar plant can be easily established in rural and remote areas.
- c. It will minimise the dependence of rural households on firewood and dung cakes which in turn will contribute to environmental conservation and adequate quantity of manure.

**53.** How can biogas solve the energy problem mainly in rural India? Give your suggestions. [Foreign 2015]

**Ans :**

Biogas to solve energy problem:

- 1. Availability of raw material.
- 2. Awareness to be created about biogas.
- 3. It will reduce the burden on conventional sources of energy.
- 4. Educate the rural people about the use of biogas.
- 5. It is a renewable source of energy.
- 6. Eco-friendly.
- 7. Model structures to be introduced by the government agencies at a subsidised rate.

**54.** “Minerals are indispensable part of our lives”. Support the statement with example.

**Ans :**

Minerals are an indispensable part of our lives:

- a. Almost everything we use, from a tiny pin to a towering building or a big ship, all are made from minerals.
- b. The railway lines and the tarmac (paving) of the roads, our implements and machinery too are made from minerals.
- c. Cars, buses, trains, aeroplanes are manufactured from minerals and run on power resources derived from the earth.
- d. Even the food that we eat contains minerals.
- e. In all stages of development, human beings have used minerals for their livelihood, decoration, festivities, religious and ceremonial rites.

**55.** Explain any three values which inspire us to conserve our energy resources. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Values:

- a. Our responsible behaviour will lead us to conserve energy resources.
- b. Our sustainable thinking which inspires us to preserve and protect the resources for the future generation.
- c. Our consciousness towards our environment will inspire not to over-utilize the resources and exploit them.

**56.** What efforts are required to use mineral resources in a planned and sustainable manner? Explain in three points.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2012]

Following efforts have to be made to use mineral in a planned and sustainable manner:

- a. Recycling of metals: We should recycle the metal or metal-made products to prevent its scarcity.

For example: Used steel blade should be sent for recycling, so that the steel can be used again for other purposes.

- b. Improved technologies need to be evolved: Traditional technologies should be replaced with new and improved technologies, so that the wastages can be minimised.
- c. Use of substitute or alternative resources: The resources which cannot be recycled or reused should be replaced with the recyclable resources, e.g. Use of green gas instead of coal for cooking purpose.

57. India is presently one of the least energy efficient countries in the world. We have to adopt cautious approaches for the judicious use of our limited energy resources.” Analyse this statement. [CBSE 2012]

or

Explain any three steps to be taken to conserve the energy resources. [CBSE 2012]

or

How can we save our limited energy sources? Suggest any three ways for its judicious use. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

The statement is right to a great extent. Therefore, we need to adopt a cautious approach for the judicious use of energy resources.

1. Need to develop a sustainable path of energy development, i.e., energy development but not at the cost of environment or needs of future generation.
2. Judicious use of limited energy resources,
3. Wastage of minerals should be minimised,
4. Modern technology should be used for the exploitation of energy resources.
5. Export of energy resources should be minimised.
6. Use of substitutes in order to save energy resources.
7. Encourage recycling of energy resources.

58. Consumption of energy in all forms has been rising all over the country. There is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path of energy development and energy saving. Suggest and explain any three measures to solve this burning problem.

[CBSE 2011,2016]

or

In the present day energy crisis, which step will you take for saving energy? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

The following steps can be taken for saving energy:

1. Judicious use of energy resources.
2. Use of public transport/ car pool.
3. To use bicycle for short distances.
4. Switching off electrical gadgets when not in use.
5. Regular cleaning of gas burners and switching off the gas regulator when not in use.
6. Avoid using refrigerator/ A. C. when not needed.
7. Creating awareness in neighbourhood with catchy slogans.
8. As India has been blessed with abundance of sunlight, water, wind and biomass, we must use these to overcome present day energy crisis. (Any three)

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.



File Revision Date : 1 July 2019

CBSE Previous Year Exams Questions Exam 2019-2020

CLASS : 10th

SUB : Social Science

Unit 2 : Contemporary India - II

For 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank

visit [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) or whatsapp at 8905629969

# CHAPTER 2.6

## Manufacturing Industries

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Why has the 'National Manufacturing Competitiveness Council' been set-up? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

To improve the productivity, economists predict what manufacturing can achieve its target over the next decades.

2. Why is the 'least cost' known as decision making factor for ideal location of an industry? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Manufacturing activity tends to locate at the most appropriate place where all the factors of industrial locations are either available or can be arranged at a lower cost.

3. What is manufacturing? [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw material to more valuable products is called as manufacturing.

4. What is agglomeration economies? [Foreign 2010]

**Ans :**

Many industries that tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centers like markets and services are known as agglomeration economies.

5. Name the river-basin where jute industries are concentrated in India. [Foreign 2010]

**Ans :**

The river-basin where jute industries are concentrated in India is Hugli river-basin.

6. Name the region which has maximum concentration of iron and steel industries. [Foreign 2010]

**Ans :**

Chota Nagpur plateau region in Jharkhand has maximum concentration of iron and steel industries.

- b. Today large industrial houses are as common place as the industrial units of many MNCs are exerting pressure on freshwater sources.  
c. Industrialisation followed by the urbanisation multiplying the problems of water scarcity and exerting pressure on water sources causing their depletion.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

8. Why do we have maximum concentration of iron and steel industry in Chota Nagpur Plateau region? Give any three regions. [CBSE 2016]

or

Why has the Chota Nagpur Region maximum concentration of iron and steel industries? Explain any three.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2015,2014,2011]

Factors responsible for concentration of iron and steel industries in Chhota Nagpur Plateau:

- a. Low cost of iron-ore
- b. High grade raw material in proximity.
- c. Cheap labour.
- d. Vast growth potential in the home market.
- e. Good transport connectivity.
- f. Availability of water resources.

**Ans :**

9. India is an important iron and steel producing country in the world. Yet we are not able to perform to our full potential." Suggest and explain any three measures to get full potential. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

India is an important iron and steel producing country in the world, yet we are not able to perform to our full potential largely due to:

- a. High costs and limited availability of cooking coal.
- b. Lower productivity of labour.
- c. Irregular supply of energy and
- d. Poor infrastructure.

10. "Agriculture gives boost to the industrial sector."

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

7. How has the ever increasing number of industries in India made worse position by exerting pressure on existing fresh water resources? Explain.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2018]

- a. Industries apart from being heavy users of water also require power to run them.

Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Agriculture gives boost to the industrial sector:

- Agriculture provides raw material to industries.
- Agriculture provides market for industrial products.
- Agriculture helps boost new industrial products.
- The industries such as cotton, jute, silk, woollen textiles, sugar and edible oil, etc., are based on agricultural raw materials.

11. Describe any three major problems faced by the weaving and processing sectors in cotton textile industry. [CBSE 2015]

or

Describe any three major problems faced by cotton textile industry in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014, 2010]

Problems of cotton textile industry are:

- Although production has increased, it is still not enough and imports are needed.
- Erratic power supply and outdated machinery.
- Low output of labour.
- Stiff competition from synthetic fabrics.

12. Why is there a tendency for the sugar mills to concentrate in Southern states of India in recent years ? Give three reasons. [CBSE 2014, 2011]

**Ans :**

Shifting of sugar industries to Southern states is because:

- Sugarcane that grows there has a higher sucrose content.
- Favourable climate provides longer crushing period and growing season.
- Cooperatives are successful in these states.
- Modern mills have more crushing capacity.

13. Analyse any three major challenges faced by the sugar industry in India. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Major challenges of sugar industry are:

- Seasonal nature of the industry.
- Old and inefficient methods of production.
- Transport delay in reaching sugar factories and the need to maximise the use of bagasse.

14. Define the term manufacturing. Classify industries on the basis of source of raw materials used.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013, 2012]

Definition: "Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw materials to more valuable products is called manufacturing."

Classification:

- Agro-based: Cotton, woollen, jute, silk textile, etc.
- Mineral-based: Iron, steel, cement etc.

15. Explain any three factors which were responsible for the concentration of cotton textile industry in Maharashtra and Gujarat in early years.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- Availability of raw cotton.
- Ready markets are available.

- Well-developed means of transportation.
- Abundant skilled and unskilled labour at cheap rate.
- Moist climate which is suitable for the cotton industry.

16. Classify industries on the basis of capital investment. How are they different from one another ? Explain with examples. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

- Classification of the industries on the basis of capital investment:
  - Small Scale Industry
  - Large Scale Industry
- Difference: If the investment is more than one crore on any industry, it is considered as a large scale industry. For example, Iron and Steel Industry/ Cement Industry (any other relevant example). While the investment is less than one crore on an industry, it is considered as a small scale industry e.g., Plastic industry, toy industry.

17. Classify industries on the basis of their main role. How are they different from each other? [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

According to their main role:

- Basic or key industries which supply their products or raw materials to manufacture other goods e.g., Iron and steel and copper smelting, aluminium smelting.
- Consumer industries that produce goods for direct use by consumers-sugar, toothpaste, paper, sewing machines, fans etc,

18. Examine the impact of liberalisation on automobile industry of India. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Impact of liberalisation on automobile industry are:

- Multi-utility vehicles have been introduced.
- The coming of new and contemporary models.
- Healthy growth of the market.
- FDI in new technology.
- Aligned the industry with global development.
- Industry has experienced a quantum jump.

19. Mention the various measures taken by the government to boost the production of jute goods.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Various steps taken by the government to boost the production of Jute are:

- In 2005, National Jute Policy was formulated with the objective of increasing productivity.
- Improvement of quality.
- Ensuring good prices to the jute farmers and enhancing the yield per hectare.

20. Explain the factors responsible for localisation of jute textile mills mainly on the banks of the river Hugh.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Factors responsible for their location in the Hugli basin are as follows:

- Proximity of the jute producing areas,
- Inexpensive water transport, supported by a good network of railways, roadways and waterways to facilitate movement of raw material to the mills,

- c. Abundant water for processing raw jute,
- d. Cheap labour from West Bengal and adjoining states of Bihar, Odisha and Uttar Pradesh.
- e. Kolkata as a large urban centre provides banking, insurance and port facilities for export of jute goods.

**21.** “Many of our spinners export cotton yarn while apparel manufacturers have to import fabric.” Explain this statement with appropriate reasons.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

- a. The weaving, knitting and processing units cannot use much of the high quality yarn that is produced in the country. Therefore, many of our spinners export cotton yarn while apparel/garment manufacturers have to import fabric.
- b. If weaving sector is improved, then yarn can be used in the country and garments can be exported to earn foreign exchange for the country.

**22.** “Production and consumption of steel is often regarded as the index of a country’s development”. Examine the statement. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

- a. Steel production is the backbone of any country’s economy since it is the basic unit for the development of the nation.
- b. Almost every industry depends on iron and steel for its manufacturing and production.
- c. In today’s era of globalisation, consumption of goods is increasing. Thus, it can be concluded that growth in production of steel is regarded as the index of country’s development.

**23.** “Environmental degradation has been seen everywhere.” Explain any three values that can help to prevent environment degradation. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Steps to minimise environmental degradation:

- a. Optimum utilisation of equipments, adopting latest techniques.
- b. Upgrading existing equipments.
- c. Minimising waste generation by maximising ash utilization.
- d. Providing green belts for nurturing ecological balance.
- e. Reducing environmental pollution through ash pond management, water recycling system and liquid waste management.

**24.** Describe any five factors responsible for the concentration of iron and steel industry in and around Chota Nagpur Plateau region. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Factors responsible for concentration of iron and steel industries in Chhota Nagpur Plateau:

- a. Low cost of iron-ore
- b. High grade raw material in proximity,
- c. Cheap labour.
- d. Vast growth potential in the home market.
- e. Good transport connectivity.
- f. Availability of water resources.

**25.** Why was the cotton textile industry concentrated in

the cotton growing belt in the early years? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Cotton textile industry was concentrated in the cotton growing belt in the early years because:

- a. Availability of raw cotton e.g. belt of Maharashtra and Gujarat.
- b. Nearness to market.
- c. Transport
- d. Port facilities
- e. Cheap labour
- f. Moist climate.

**26.** What challenges are faced by the jute textile industries in India? Mention the main objectives of National Jute Policy, 2005. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Problems faced by jute mills:

- a. Stiff competition in international market from countries like Bangladesh, Brazil, Philippines, Egypt, etc.
- b. Stiff competition from synthetic fibre
- c. Products need to be diversified.

In 2005, National Jute Policy was formulated with the objective of increasing productivity, improving quality, ensuring good prices and enhancing the yield per hectare.

**27.** “The iron and steel industry is the basic as well as heavy industry.” Support the statement with three points. [CBSE 2012]

or

Why is iron and steel industry called a basic industry? Explain. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Iron and steel industry is the basic industry as:

- a. All the other industries depend on it for their machinery.
- b. Steel is needed to manufacture a variety of engineering goods.
- c. It provides variety of consumer goods.
- d. Construction material, defence, medical, telephonic, scientific equipments, are the gift of iron and steel industry.

**28.** What is the importance of the Information Technology sector for the Indian economy? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

The importance of IT sector is as follows:

- a. It has provided employment to over one million people.
- b. This industry is said to be a major foreign exchange earner.
- c. It has helped in the growth of the service sector.
- d. It provides employment to innumerable men and women.

**29.** What is the meaning of manufacturing industry? Why is it considered the backbone of economic development? Give two reasons. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw materials to more valuable products is called manufacturing.

It is considered as backbone of development because:

- a. It not only helps in modernising agriculture but also forms the backbone of our economy.
- b. Industrial development is a precondition for eradication of unemployment and poverty from our country.

**30.** Why is cotton textile industry the largest industry in India today? Give any three reasons.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

- a. Cotton textile industry contributes 14 percent of the total industrial production.
  - b. It provides employment to 35 million persons directly, the second largest after agriculture.
  - c. It earns foreign exchange of about 24.6 percent (4 percent of GDP).
- 31.** What are the three main reasons for shifting of the sugar mills to Maharashtra in recent years.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

There are three main reasons which are as follows:

- a. The cane produced has a higher sucrose content.
  - b. The cooler climate which ensures a longer crushing season.
  - c. The cooperatives are more successful in this state.
- 32.** Explain any three factors responsible for the location of cotton textile industry in Mumbai and Ahmedabad.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

- a. Availability of raw cotton, market, transport including accessible port facilities,
  - b. cheap labour and;
  - c. moist climate have caused the concentration of cotton textile industries in Mumbai and Ahmedabad region.
- 33.** Distinguish between an integrated steel plant and a mini steel plants stating three points of distinction.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

- a. An integrated steel plant is larger than a mini steel plant.
  - b. Mini steel plant use steel scrap and sponge iron while Integrated steel plant use basic raw materials i.e. iron ore for making steel.
  - c. Mini steel plant produces mild and alloy steel while integrated steel plant produces only steel.
- 34.** Mention any two factors that have contributed to a healthy growth of the automobile industry in India. Name two centres where this industry is located.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

- a. The introduction of new and contemporary models stimulated the demand for vehicles in the market.
- b. Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) brought in new technology and aligned the industry, with global developments. The two centres of automobile industry are Jamshedpur and Gurgaon.

**35.** Examine what are the causes of industrial pollution of freshwater resources. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Freshwater sources are polluted by organic and inorganic wastes and effluents discharged by industries into rivers. The main culprits are paper and pulp, chemical, textile, petroleum refineries, tanneries industries etc.

- 36.** Suggest any three measures to reduce the industrial pollution of freshwater resources. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

- a. Minimising use of water for processing by reusing and recycling it in two or more successive stages.
- b. Harvesting of rainwater to meet water requirements.
- c. Treatment of hotwater and effluents before releasing them in rivers and ponds.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

- 37.** Suggest any three steps to minimize the environmental degradation caused by the industrial development in India. [CBSE 2016]

or

Explain any three steps to be taken to minimize environmental degradation by industries.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014, 2013, 2012]

Three steps to minimize the environmental degradation caused by industrial development in India are:  
Every litre of waste water discharged by our industry pollutes eight times the quantity of freshwater.

1. Minimizing use of water for processing by reusing and recycling it in two or more successive stages.
  2. Harvesting of rainwater to meet water requirement.
  3. Treating hot water and effluents before releasing them in rivers and ponds.
  4. Particulate matter in the air can be reduced by fitting smoke stacks to factories with electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters, scrubbers and inertial separators.
  5. Smoke can be reduced by using oil or gas instead of coal in factories.
  6. Machinery and equipments can be used and generators should be fitted with silencers.
  7. Almost all machineries can be redesigned
  8. to increase energy efficiency and reduce noise.
- 38.** Why is the economic strength of a country measured by the development of manufacturing industries? Explain with examples. [CBSE 2018]

**Ans :**

The economic strength of a country is measured by the development of manufacturing industries. Manufacturing sector is considered the backbone of development in general and economic development in particular mainly because:

- a. Manufacturing industries not only help in modernising agriculture, which forms the backbone of our economy, but also reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income by providing them jobs in secondary and tertiary sector.
- b. Industrial development is a precondition for eradication of unemployment and poverty from our country.
- c. It was also aimed at bringing down regional disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backwards areas.
- d. Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce, and brings in much needed foreign



exchange.

- e. Countries that transform their raw materials into a wide variety of furnished goods of higher value are prosperous.

39. Describe the importance of manufacturing.

[CBSE 2016]

or

Describe the importance of manufacturing sector in countries like India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

The economic strength of a country lies in the development of manufacturing industries because:

- Manufacturing industries help in modernising agriculture which forms the backbone of our economy.
- It reduces the heavy dependence of people on agriculture sector and creates jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.
- It is necessary for the removal of unemployment and poverty.
- It brings down regional disparities.
- Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce and enhances prosperity.
- It brings much needed foreign exchange

40. What are software technology parks? State any two points of significance of information technology industry in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Software Technology Park: Software technology parks provide single window service and high data communication facility to software experts.

Significance of IT industry:

- A major impact of this industry has been on employment generation. Upto 31 March, 2005, the IT industry employed over one million persons.
- It is encouraging to know that 30 percent of the people employed in this sector are women.
- This industry has been a major foreign exchange earner in the last two or three years because of its fast growing Business Processes Outsourcing (BPO) sector.
- The continuous growth in the hardware and software is the key to the success of IT industry in India.

41. "The economic strength of a country is measured by the development of manufacturing industries." Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Role of manufacturing industries in the economic development:

- Manufacturing sector is considered as the backbone of development.
- All round development depends on industries,
- Industries help in modernising agriculture,
- Reduces the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income by providing them jobs.
- Industrial development is a precondition for eradication of unemployment and poverty from the country.
- It aims at bringing down regional disparities.
- Expansion of manufactured goods.
- Trade and commerce brings in much needed

foreign exchange.

9. India's prosperity lies in increasing and diversifying of its manufacturing industries as quickly as possible.

42. Evaluate the factors which are responsible for the location of jute industry in West Bengal.

[CBSE 2016, 2014]

or

Describe any five factors responsible for the concentration of jute mills along the banks of the Hugh river.

[CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Factors for the concentration of jute mills in West Bengal:

- Proximity of the jute producing areas.
- Inexpensive water transport.
- Abundant water.
- Cheap and skilled labour.
- Port facilities.
- Kolkata as a large urban centre provides banking and insurance facilities,

43. "Industrialisation and urbanisation go hand in hand". Validate the statement.

[CBSE 2016]

or

"Industrialisation and urbanisation go hand in hand". Justify the statement by giving any three arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

After an industrial activity starts, the urbanisation follows.

- Sometimes industries are located in or near the cities.
- Cities provide markets for manufactured goods.
- Cities provide various services like banking and insurance etc.

44. Classify industries on the basis of source of raw material. How are they different from each other?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

On the basis of sources of raw material industries are classified as:

- Agro Based Industries.
- Mineral Based Industries.

These industries are different from each other on following basis:

- Agro Based Industries:
  - Draws their raw materials from agricultural products.
  - e.g.: Textiles-Cotton, jute, silk and woolen, Rubber, sugar, coffee, tea and edible oil etc.
- Mineral Based Industries:
  - Draws their raw materials from minerals.
  - e.g., Iron and steel, cement, machine tools, petrochemicals etc.

45. "The textile industry is the only industry in the country which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain." Justify the statement.

[CBSE 2016]

or

"Textile industry occupies a unique position in Indian economy" Support the statement with appropriate arguments.

[CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

The textile industry occupies a unique position in Indian economy, because it contributes:

- Significantly to industrial production (14 percent).
- It generates employment (35 million persons directly).
- Earns foreign exchange (about 24.6 percent).
- It contributes to a larger amount towards GDP (4 percent).

Only industry in the country which is self- reliant and complete in the value chain i.e., from raw material to the highest value added products.

46. What is the manufacturing sector? Why is it considered the backbone of development? Interpret the reason.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Definition of Manufacturing Sector: Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw materials to more valuable products is called manufacturing.

It is considered as backbone of development because:

- It not only helps in modernising agriculture but also forms the backbone of our economy.
- Industrial development is a precondition for eradication of unemployment and poverty from our country.
- Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce.
- Countries that transform their raw materials into a wide variety of finished goods of higher value are prosperous.

47. Explain any five factors affecting the location of a industry. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

The factors affecting the location of an industry:

- Availability of raw material.
- Availability of cheap labour.
- Availability of capital and bank facilities,
- Availability of power and other infrastructure.
- Proximity to markets.
- Availability of adequate and swift means of transport.

48. How does industry pollute the environment? Explain with three examples. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Industries are responsible for three types of pollution i.e.

- Air pollution is caused by the presence of high proportion of undesirable gases, such as sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide. Smoke is emitted by chemical and paper factories, brick kilns, refineries and smelting plants, and burning of fossil fuels in big and small factories.
- Water pollution is caused by organic and inorganic industrial wastes and effluents discharged into rivers. The main culprits in this regard are paper, pulp, chemical, textile and dyeing, petroleum refineries and electroplating industries that let out dyes, detergents, acids, salts and heavy metals like lead and mercury, pesticides, fertilisers, synthetic chemicals with carbon, plastics and rubber, etc., into the water bodies.
- Noise pollution is due to industrial and construction

activities. Machinery, factory equipment, generators, saws and pneumatic and electric drills cause hearing problems and irritation.

49. What is manufacturing sector? Describe four types of manufacturing sector on the basis of ownership.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw materials to more valuable products is called manufacturing.

Four types of manufacturing sector on the basis of ownership are:

- Public sector owned by Govt, agencies. For example, BHEL, SAIL, etc,
- Private sector owned by individuals or a group of individuals. For example, TISCO, Bajaj Auto Ltd, Dabur Industries, etc.
- Joint sector jointly owned by the state and individuals. For example, Oil India Ltd, etc.
- Cooperative sector is owned by and operated by the producers or suppliers of raw materials, workers or both. For example Amul, Mother Dairy, OMFED, sugar industry and coir industry, etc.

50. Explain the pro-active approach adopted by the National Thermal Power Corporation (NTPC) for preserving the natural environment and resources.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The pro-active approach adopted by the National Thermal Power Corporation (NTPC) for preserving the natural environment:

- Optimum utilisation of equipment, adopting latest techniques and upgrading existing equipment.
- Minimising waste generation by maximising ash utilisation.
- Green belts for nurturing ecological balance and addressing the question of special purpose vehicles for afforestation.
- Reducing environmental pollution through ash pond management, ash water recycling system and liquid waste management.
- Ecological monitoring, reviews and online database management for all its power stations.

51. Describe the various physical and human factors responsible for the location of industries.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Physical Factors:

- Availability of raw materials : Ideal location should be near the sources of raw materials.
- Power resources: Power resources like coal and electricity must be available for the industry.
- Water and favourable climate.

Human Factors:

- Cheap and efficient labour,
- Capital and bank facilities,
- Good market,
- Transport facility.

52. "Agriculture and industry are complementary to each other." Explain with four examples. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

- Agro industries in India have given a major boost to agriculture by raising its productivity.

- b. Industries depend on agriculture for their raw materials.
- c. Industries sell their products such as irrigation pumps, fertilisers, etc., to the farmers.
- d. Industries have made the production processes of agriculture very efficient.

53. Explain any five measures to control industrial pollution in India. [CBSE 2013]

**Ans :**

Five ways to reduce industrial pollution are listed below:

- a. Restructuring the manufacturing processes to reduce or eliminate pollutants, through a process called pollution prevention.
- b. Creating cooling ponds, which are man-made and are designed to cool the heated waters from industries by evaporation, condensation and radiation.
- c. Filtration of sewage in water treatment plants attached to industries.
- d. Instructing industries to be set-up far from residential areas.
- e. Backing the constitutional provisions by a number of laws-acts, rules, and notifications.

54. How do industries pollute water? Suggest any two measures to control water pollution. [CBSE 2013]

**Ans :**

Most important are the industrial effluents that are discharged into rivers. They are both organic and inorganic. Coal, dyes, pesticides, fertilisers, plastic are some common pollutants of water. Industrial wastes containing toxic metals pollute the water.

Suggestions to control water pollution:

- a. Water should be reused and recycled to maximise its usage.
- b. Rainwater should be harvested to meet water requirements.
- c. Hot water and effluents should be treated before releasing in river and ponds.
- d. Overdrawing of groundwater reserves by industry where there is a threat to ground water resources also need to be regulated legally.

55. Classify the industries on the basis of ownership and give one example of each category. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

	Category	Examples
1.	Public Sector Industries	BHEL, SAIL, etc
2.	Private Sector Industries	Tata Steel, Bajaj Auto Ltd.
3.	Joint Sector Industries	Oil India Ltd.
4.	Cooperative Sector Industries	Sugar Industry in Maharashtra.

56. Distinguish between large scale and small scale industries. Give two examples each, [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Large Scale Industries:

- a. Manufacture large quantities of finished goods.
- b. The quantity of raw material and capital

investment is large.

- c. Example: Iron and steel industry, cotton textile industry.

Small Scale Industries:

- a. Manufacture small goods.
- b. No huge quantity of raw material or capital is required.
- c. Example: Garment industry, soap making industry.

57. Why is India not able to perform to her full potential in iron and steel production? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

India is an important producer of iron and steel but still it has failed to perform to its potential due to following reasons:

- a. Shortage of raw material
- b. Lower productivity of labour
- c. Shortage of power
- d. Poor infrastructure
- e. Lower investment in research and
- f. Development

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

File Revision Date : 1 July 2019

CBSE Previous Year Exams Questions Exam 2019-2020

CLASS : 10th

SUB : Social Science

Unit 2 : Contemporary India - II

For 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank

visit [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) or whatsapp at 8905629969

# CHAPTER 2.7

## Life Line of National Economy

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. What is a new arrival on the transportation map of India?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Pipeline transport network is a new arrival on the transportation map of India to transport liquids as well as solids in slurry form.

2. What is the major objective to develop Super Highways?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The major objective of developing Super Highways is to reduce the time and distance between the mega-cities of India.

3. Why was Jawaharlal Nehru port developed?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

To decongest the Mumbai port and serve as a hub port of the region.

4. Why was the Haldia seaport set-up?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Haldia seaport was set-up as a subsidiary port to relieve growing pressure on Kolkata port.

5. What are known as lifelines of the national economy?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Means of transport and communication.

6. What are the two major means of land transport?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

(1) Roadways, (2) Railways.

7. Which term is used to describe trade between two or more countries?

**Ans :** [CBSE2013]

International trade.

8. What does favourable balance of trade refer to?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

When the value of exports exceeds the value of imports, we call it Favourable Balance of Trade.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

9. Elaborate any three advantages of railways in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Advantages of railways in India are as follows:

- a. It is both convenient and safer to travel long distances by railways.

- b. They give employment to a large number of people.
- c. Railways also make it possible to conduct multifarious activities like business, sightseeing, pilgrimage along with transportation of goods over longer distances.

10. What is pipeline transportation? Write two merits and demerits of the same. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Pipeline transport network is the new mode of transport these days. In the past, pipelines were used to transport water to cities and industries. Now, these are used for transporting crude oil, petroleum products and natural gas from oil and natural gas fields to refineries, fertilizer factories and big thermal power plants. Solids can also be transported through a pipeline when converted into slurry. Merits:

- a. Useful in transporting liquids and solid slurry from far away locations.
- b. Subsequent running costs after laying down the network are minimal.
- c. It rules out transshipment losses or delays.

Demerits:

- a. Initial cost of laying pipelines is high.
- b. Pipelines can burst or can have leakage leading to wastage of valuable resource like water, mineral oil, etc.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

11. How do modern means of transport serve as lifelines of our nation? Explain. [CBSE 2016]

or

“Efficient means of transport are pre-requisites for the fast development.” Express your views in favour of this statement. [CBSE 2016]

or

Why are efficient means of transport pre-requisites for the fast development of the country? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014, 2011]

Transport and communication are the basic arteries of a nation's economy because:



- a. Economic development of a region or a country very largely depends upon the dense network of transport and communication.
- b. They link areas of production with consumption, agriculture with industry and village with towns and cities.
- c. They help the industry by providing raw materials and distribution of finished goods.
- d. They help in the development of all the three sectors: Primary, Secondary and Tertiary.
- e. They help in the balanced regional development.

**12.** What are Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways? Mention any two objectives of this project. The North-South and East- West corridors join which terminal cities.

**Ans :**

- a. The Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways is a major road development project linking Delhi-Kolkata-Chennai -Mumbai and Delhi by six lane super highways.
- b. The two major objectives of these Super Highways projects are to (a) reduce the time and (b) distance between the mega cities of India.
- c. The North-South Corridors linking Srinagar (Jammu and Kashmir) and Kanyakumari (Tamil Nadu) and East- West Corridor connecting Silchar (Assam) and Porbander (Gujarat).

**13.** Describe three major problems faced by the road transport in India. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Road transportation in India faces the following problems:

- a. Keeping in view the volume of traffic and passengers, the road network is inadequate.
- b. About half of the roads are unmetalled and this limits their usage during the rainy season.
- c. The National Highways are inadequate.
- d. The roadways are highly congested in cities and most of the bridges and culverts are old and narrow.

**14.** Explain the importance of railways as the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The importance of railways as the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India is:

- a. Railways make it possible to conduct multifarious activities like business, sight seeing, pilgrimage along with transportation of goods.
- b. It is suitable for long distance travel.
- c. Plays an important role in national integration.
- d. Railways bind the economic life of the country.
- e. It accelerates the development of the industry and agriculture.
- f. Today the railways have become more important than all other means of transport put together.

**15.** Describe the rural roads in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015, 2011]

- a. Rural roads link rural areas and villages with towns.
- b. These roads received special impetus under the

Pradhan Mantri Grameen Sadak Yojna.

- c. Special provisions are made so that every village in the country is linked to a major town in the country by an all-season motorable road.

**16.** Describe any three features of waterways in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Features of waterways in India are:

- a. India has been one of the seafaring countries.
- b. Sea men sailed far and near; carrying and spreading Indian commerce and culture.
- c. Waterways are the cheapest means of transport.
- d. They are most suitable for carrying heavy and bulky goods over long distance.
- e. It is fuel-efficient and environment friendly mode of transport.
- f. 9.5% of the country's trade volume is moved by sea.

**17.** Describe any three factors that accord prominence to airways as a mode of transportation. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Following are the factors that accord airways prominence as a mode of transportation:

- a. They are the fastest mode of transportation.
- b. They are the best means of transport for remote, inaccessible and hostile areas.
- c. Airways play a vital role in the event of natural and human-made calamities like floods, famines, earthquake, epidemics and war by virtue of their swiftness.

**18.** Describe the significance of tourism as a trade in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Significance of tourism as a trade in India:

1. Tourism in India has grown substantially over the last three decades.
2. Foreign tourist's arrival has witnessed an increase, thus contributing to foreign exchange.
3. More than 15 million people are directly engaged in the tourism industry.
4. It provides support to local handicrafts and cultural pursuits.
5. Tourism also promotes national integration.
6. It helps in development of international understanding about our culture and heritage.
7. Foreign tourists visit India for heritage tourism, ecotourism, adventure tourism, cultural tourism, medical and business tourism.

**19.** Explain the ways in which tourism promotes the related industries and services of the destination-country.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The industries cheek in jowl with tourism is handicraft industry, sculpture, sea-shell, regional handloom among others. Indian handicraft and handloom in particular, hold special attraction for the Western tourists. Hospitality in services sector is benefitted immensely by tourism.

Also, the transportation services reap the benefits of tourism. Over 2.6 million foreign tourists visit India every year. For example, tourism contributed 14,000

crore rupees to the India exchequer in year 2000

and generated employment for 15 million people directly engaged in the tourism industry.

- 20.** Why is a dense and efficient network of transport and communication a prerequisite for the development of local, national and global trade of today? Give your opinion.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015, 2012]

Dense and efficient network of transport and communication.

- We use different material and services in our daily 'life. Some of these are available in our immediate surroundings while other requirements are met by bringing things from other places. Movement of these goods and services can be over three domains of earth.
- Today, the world has converted into a large village with the help of efficient and fast moving transport.
- Transport has been able to achieve this with the help of equally developed communication system.
- Therefore transport, communication and trade are complementary to each other.
- Today India is well linked with the rest of the world despite its vast size, diversity, linguistic and cultural plurality.

- 21.** What is the importance of transport? Mention the various means of transport available in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Means of transport:

- Roadways
- Railways
- Pipelines
- Waterways
- Airways.

Importance of Transport:

- Connects the people
- Sense of belonging in the people living at remote places.
- Helpful for business activities.
- Helpful in the period of crisis.

- 22.** Why is air travel preferred in the north-eastern states of India? Explain. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

- Big rivers:** Presence of big rivers like Brahmaputra make it difficult to construct roads and railways. Airways are suitable when rivers get flooded.
- Dissected relief:** Uneven surface—not suitable for the construction of roadways and railways which can be a costly affair. Can be easily travelled by airways.
- Dense forests:** Dense forests hamper the construction of roadways and railways.
- International Frontiers:** International borders of 'Bangladesh, Myanmar, China, etc. can be easily travelled by airways without much hassles.

- 23.** Why are metalled roads better than unmetalled roads? What is the role of border roads and national highways in transportation? [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Metalled roads are made of either cement, concrete or even bitumen of coal. Therefore, these are durable over unmetalled road. Unmetalled roads go out of use in rainy season.

Border roads plays an important role in connecting strategically important difficult areas and helps in the economic development of the area. National Highways are the primary road system which links important parts of the country.

- 24.** Explain any four qualitative improvements made in Indian Railways. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

- Conversion of meter gauge to broad gauge.
- Steam engines have been replaced by- diesel and electric engines. This has increased the speed and haulage capacity.
- The replacement of steam engine run by coal has improved the environment of stations and its surroundings.
- Railways routes have been extended to areas where there was no railway lines earlier.

- 25.** Explain any three major problems faced by Indian Railways. [CBS E 2011]

**Ans :**

In India rail transport suffers from certain problems. These are as follows:

- Poor service offered by railways.
- Thefts and damaging of railway property are rampant.
- The large population puts enormous strain on existing infrastructure.

- 26.** Explain any four advantages of pipeline transportation.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

The four advantages of pipeline transportation are:

- Both solid (when converted into slurry) liquid and gases can be transported through pipelines.
- Initial cost of laying pipelines is high but subsequent running costs are minimal.
- Transshipment of losses and delays are minimum.
- It is economical to transport petroleum, natural gas, fertilizers to interior places.

- 27.** What is the difference between personal communication and mass, communication? State any two points of importance of mass communication. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Personal communication means a communication between two persons either through oral, letter or through telephone etc, while mass communication includes the use of radio, television, press, films etc, for wider public audience. The two points of importance of mass communication are

- provides entertainment and
- creates awareness among people about various national programmes and policies.

- 28.** What is meant by international trade? State any one feature of India's international trade. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

- Trade between two countries is called international

trade.

- b. One of the features of international trade of India is information technology.
- c. Trade
- d. International Trade
- e. Favourable Balance of Trade
- f. Unfavourable Balance of Trade

29. Define the following terms:

- a. Trade
- b. International Trade
- c. Favourable Balance of Trade
- d. Unfavourable Balance of Trade [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

- a. The exchange of goods among people, states and countries is referred to as trade.
- b. Trade between two countries is called international trade.
- c. When the value of export exceeds the value of imports, it is called a favourable balance of trade.
- d. When the value of imports exceeds the value of exports, it is termed as unfavourable balance of Trade.

30. Explain four advantages of road transport in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Roads can negotiate higher gradients of slopes and as such can traverse mountains such as the Himalayas.

- a. Road transport is economical in transportation of few persons and smaller amount of goods over short distances.
- b. It also provides door-to-door service, reducing the cost of loading and unloading is much lower.
- c. Road transport also provides feeder service to other modes of transport such as they provide a link between railway stations, airports and sea ports.

31. Write any four characteristics of Kandla seaport.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2010]

The following are the characteristics of the Kandla sea port:

- a. It is a tidal port.
- b. It was the first port developed soon after the Independence of India in Kuchchh.
- c. It was developed to ease the volume of trade from Mumbai port after the loss of Karachi port to Pakistan after the Partition in 1947.
- d. It caters to the convenient handling of imports and exports of granary and industrial belt spreading from states like Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan and Gujarat.

32. Explain any four merits of pipeline transport in India.

**Ans :** [All India 2010]

The following are the merits of pipeline transport in India:

- a. Solids (when converted into slurry), liquids and gases can be transported through pipelines.
- b. Initial cost of laying pipelines is high but subsequent running costs are minimal.
- c. Trans-shipment of losses and delays are ruled out.
- d. It is economical to transport petroleum, natural

gas, fertilizers to interior places of the country.

33. What is the meaning of road density? Describe any three major problems faced by road transportation in India.

**Ans :**

[Foreign 2010]

The length of road per 100 sq. km of area is known as density of roads.

Road transportation in India faces the following problems:

- a. Keeping in view the volume of traffic and passengers, the road network is inadequate.
- b. About half of the roads are unmetalled and this limits their usage during the rainy season.
- c. The National Highways are inadequate.
- d. The roadways are highly congested in cities and most of the bridges and culverts are old and narrow.

34. What is the importance of railway transport? Describe any three major problems faced by Indian Railways.

**Ans :**

[Foreign 2010]

Railways are the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India. Indian Railways have been a great integrating force for more than 150 years. It conducts multifarious activities like business, sightseeing, pilgrimage along with transportation of goods over longer distances.

The following are the major problems faced by the Indian Railways:

- a. Poor service offered by railways.
- b. Thefts and damages of railways property.
- c. Pressure of population puts enormous pressure on existing infrastructure.

35. Describe any four features of Indian tourism as a trade.

**Ans :**

[Foreign 2010]

Following are the features of Indian tourism as a trade:

- a. Tourism in India has grown substantially over the last three decades with the bumper increase in foreign tourists.
- b. It provides employment and financial support to local handicrafts and cultural pursuits.
- c. India has become a popular destination for heritage, adventure, medical and business tourism.
- d. Indian tourism has achieved the status of maximum foreign exchange earner.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

36. Explain with examples the conditions responsible for uneven distribution pattern of the railway network in India.

**Ans :**

[Foreign 2016]

The distribution pattern of the Railway network:

- a. The northern plains with their vast level land, high population density and rich agricultural resources provided the most favourable condition for their growth.
- b. In the hilly terrains of the peninsular region, railway tracks are laid through low hills, gaps or

tunnels.

- c. The Himalayan mountainous regions too are unfavourable for the construction of railway lines due to high relief, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities.
- d. It was difficult to lay railway lines on the sandy plain of western Rajasthan, swamps of Gujarat, forested tracks of Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Odisha and Jharkhand.
- e. The contiguous stretch of Sahyadri could be crossed only through gaps or passes (Ghats).
- f. The development of the Konkan railway along the west coast has facilitated the movement of passengers and goods.

37. Highlight any five features of Hazira- Vijaipur-Jagdishpur gas pipeline. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

- a. This pipeline is about 1700 km. long.
- b. Hazira-Vijaipur-Jagdishpur cross country gas pipeline links Mumbai High and Bassien with the fertilizer, power and industrial complexes in western and northern India.
- c. This artery has provided an impetus to India's gas production.
- d. The power and fertilizer industries are the key users of natural gas.
- e. Use of Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) for vehicles to replace liquid fuels is gaining wide popularity in the country.

38. Why is air travel more popular in the North Eastern states of India? Explain. [Foreign 2016]

**Ans :**

Air Transport is considered as an important means of transport in the North-Eastern part of our country because:

- a. Big rivers: Presence of big rivers like Brahmaputra make it difficult to construct roads and railways. Airways are suitable when rivers get flooded.
- b. Dissected relief: Uneven surface-not suitable for the construction of roadways and railways which can be a costly affair. Can be easily travelled by airways.
- c. Dense forests: Dense forests hamper the construction of roadways and railways.
- d. International Frontiers: International borders of Bangladesh, Myanmar, China, etc. can be easily travelled by airways without much hassles.

39. What is trade? Explain the importance of international trade. [Delhi 2016]

**Ans :**

Trade between two countries is called International Trade.

Importance:

- a. International trade of a country is an index to its economic prosperity.
- b. It is considered the economic barometer for a country.
- c. As the resources are space bound, no country can survive without international trade.
- d. Countries have trade relations with the major trading blocks.

- e. Exchange of commodities and goods have been superseded by the exchange of information and knowledge.

40. Define the term 'Tourism'. Why is tourism known as a trade? Explain. [Foreign 2016]

**Ans :**

Tourism: "The cultural, recreational and commercial visit to internal places is known as Tourism."

Tourism is known as trade because

- a. Foreign tourists arrival in the country contributing 21,828 crore of foreign exchange.
- b. More than 15 million people are directly engaged in the tourism industry.
- c. Tourism provides support to local handicrafts.
- d. Foreign tourists visit India for medical tourism and business tourism.
- e. Helps in the growth of national income and integrity.

41. Compare and contrast the merits and demerits of roadways with those of railways. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Roadways v/s Railways:

1. Construction cost of roads is much lower than that of railway lines and construction time is also comparatively less.
2. Roads can traverse comparatively more dissected and undulating topography which is a limitation in case of railways.
3. Roads can negotiate higher gradients of slopes and as such can traverse mountains like the Himalayas, whereas the mountainous regions are unfavourable for the construction of railway lines due to high relief, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities. Likewise, it is difficult to lay railway lines on the sandy plains in the deserts, swampy or forested tracks.
4. Road transport is economical in transportation of few persons and relatively smaller amount of goods over short distances, whereas railways are suitable for transportation of large number of people and goods in bulk, especially over long distances.
5. Roadways provide door-to-door service, thus the cost of loading and unloading is much lower but railways have not reached 'everywhere', still there are places which are yet to be connected with the railways.
6. Road transport is also used as a feeder to other modes of transport such as they provide a link between railway stations, air and seaports. On the other hand, railways work as a lifeline for the economic growth of a country as they carry raw materials and produced goods from one part of the nation to another on a large scale.

42. Classify communication services into two categories. Explain main features of each. [Outside Delhi 2016]

**Ans :**

Classification of communication services in two categories:

- (a) Personal communication
- (b) Mass Communication.



**Features:**

1. Personal communication:
  - (a) Communication between two or more persons at personal level.
  - (b) The Indian postal network handles parcels as well as personal written communication.
  - (c) Cards, letters by posts and email.
  - (d) Telephone services like STD, ISD provide easy and comfortable network to a large number of people.
2. Mass communication:
  - (a) It is the communication through which one can communicate with several people at the same time.
  - (b) It provides the entertainment and creates awareness among people about various National programmes and policies.
  - (c) It includes print media like newspapers, magazines, book etc. and electronic media like Radio, Television etc.

43. Analyse the physiographic and economic factors that have influenced the distribution pattern of the railway network in our country. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Rail transport is the most convenient mode of transportation. Though the railway network is not evenly distributed across the country. The distribution pattern of the railway network in the country has been largely influenced by physiographic, economic and administrative factors. Physiographic Factors:

1. The northern plains with their vast level land, high population density and rich agricultural resources provide the most favourable condition for their growth of railway networks.
2. The uneven terrain like hills, mountains, rivers with wide beds have posed severe obstacle in the infrastructural development of railways like laying tracks, construction of bridges and so on.
3. In the hilly terrain of the peninsular region, railway tracks are laid through low hills, gaps or tunnels.
4. The Himalayan mountainous regions too are unfavourable for the construction of railway lines due to high relief, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities.
5. (a) It is equally difficult on the sandy plain of western Rajasthan, swamps of Gujarat, forested tracks of Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Odisha and Jharkhand.

**Economic Factors:**

- a. There are several economic factors that affect the distribution of railways e.g. state funding plays a vital role in the development of railways across the nations.
- b. The state with flexible laws supports the growth of railways.
- c. Along with this the places that are highly industrialised attract the development of railways. Since the growth of both is complimentary to each other e.g. recently railways network is enhancing along the industrial corridors.

44. 'Road transport and Rail transport in India are not competitive but complementary to each other.'

Justify the statement.

[Foreign 2015]

**Ans :**

Road Transport and Rail Transport:

The statement 'Road Transport' and 'Rail Transport' in India are not competitive but complementary to each other are justified in the following ways:

1. Road transport is more suitable for short distances whereas rail transport is more suitable for long distances.
2. Road transport is economical in transportation of few persons and relatively smaller amount of goods over short distances, whereas rail transport is more suitable for large number of people and heavy goods.
3. It is beneficial for perishable goods to be carried by roads in short period of time, whereas non-perishable and bulky goods are transported by railways for a longer distances.
4. Road transport increases the efficiency of railways.
5. Road transport links the rural areas with railway stations.
6. The deficiency of railways is compensated by road transport.

45. Elaborate any two important networks of pipeline transportation in India along with their branches.

[CBSE 2014, 2011]

**Ans :**

Commodities transported by pipelines: Crude oil, petroleum products, natural gas and even solids in the form of slurry.

Network:

- a. From upper Assam to Kanpur (Uttar Pradesh), via Guwahati, Barauni and Allahabad. It has branches from Barauni to Haldia via Rajbandh, Rajbandh to Maurigram and Guwahati to Siliguri.
- b. From Salaya in Gujarat to Jalandhar in Punjab via Viramgam, Mathura, Delhi and Sonipat. It has branches to connect Koyali (near Vadodara, Gujarat) Chakshu and other places.
- c. From Hazira in Gujarat to Jagdishpur in Uttar Pradesh, Gas pipeline via Vijaipur in Madhya Pradesh. It has branches to Kota in Rajasthan, Shahjahanpur, Babrala and other places in Uttar Pradesh.

46. 'Advancement of international trade of a country is an index to its prosperity.' Support the statement with suitable examples. [CBSE 2014, 2011]

or

"No country can survive without international trade in the present global world." Explain the statement.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2011]

- a. No country in the world is self-sufficient in all its needs. Goods produced by one country are required by the other country and vice-versa. Hence, differences in resources, needs and development among nations creates conditions for international trade between them.
- b. It helps in exchange of surplus goods with those of deficit countries through foreign trade.
- c. Foreign trade has helped India to improve its productivity of manufactured goods.
- d. International trade contributed to India's

economic growth, raising income levels of people thus, increasing the foreign exchange reserves.

- e. International trade helps India to import advanced technology of other countries to improve its own production.
- f. Thus, prosperity of a country depends on the advancement of the international trade and hence, it is called the 'economic barometer' of a nation.

47. "Indian Railways binds the economic life of the country as well as accelerates the development of industry and agriculture." Justify the statement. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Railways are the most important mode of transport in India due to the following reasons:

- a. Railways are the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India, as they link different parts of the country.
- b. They carry huge loads and bulky goods to long distances.
- c. Railways make it possible to conduct multifarious activities like business, sightseeing, pilgrimage along with goods transportation over longer distances.
- d. Railways have been a great integrating force for the nation, for more than 150 years now.
- e. They have been helpful in binding the economic life of the country and cultural fusion.
- f. They have accelerated the development of the industry and agriculture. (Any five)

48. Describe any five major problems faced by road transport in India. [CBSE 2013]

**Ans :**

Five problems faced by road transport in India are given below:

- a. Volume of traffic and passengers is very large.
- b. Road network is inadequate.
- c. Half the roads are unmetalled, which limits their usage in rainy seasons.
- d. National highways too are inadequate.
- e. Roadways are highly congested in cities and most bridges and culverts are old and narrow.

49. Transport and trade are complementary to each other." Justify in three points. [CBSE 2013]

**Ans :**

Transport and communication for local, national and global trade:

- a. Today, the world has been converted into a large village with the help of efficient and fast moving transport.
- b. Transport has been able to achieve this with the help of equally developed communication system.
- c. Therefore, transport, communication and trade are complementary to each other.
- d. Today, India is well-linked with the rest of the world despite its vast size, diversity and linguistic and socio-cultural plurality.
- e. Railways, airways, waterways, newspapers, radio, television, cinema and internet have been contributing to its socioeconomic progress in many ways.
- f. The trades from local to international levels have

added to the vitality of its economy.

- g. It has enriched our life and added substantially to growing amenities and facilities for the comforts of life.

50. What is mass communication? What are the different means of mass communication? What is the significance of mass communication in a country like India? [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Mass communication: Means (like electronic media) which covers large number of people at the same time. Different means of communication are radio, television, films and internet, newspapers and magazines.

Significance of mass communication are:

- a. Covers more than 95% of India's total population.
- b. Source of education and entertainment.
- c. Most instant means of mass information.
- d. Brings all classes of people together.

51. Explain with examples the changing nature of international trade of India in the last fifteen years. [CBSE 2012]

or

Write a note on the changing nature of International trade in India in the last fifteen years. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

There has been a change in the nature of our international trade:

- a. Since 2004-2005, the share of agriculture and allied products, ores and minerals, chemical engineering goods has been increasing.
- b. Exchange of commodities and goods have been superseded by the exchange of information and knowledge.
- c. India has emerged as a software giant at international level,
- d. India is earning large foreign exchange through the export of information technology.
- e. Imports: Commodities imports include petroleum and petroleum products 41.87% and Coal, Coke 14.17%.

52. Classify roads into six classes according to their capacity. What is the role of National Highway Authority of India?

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2012]

Roads are classified as given below:

- a. Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways reduced the time and distance between the mega cities of India.
- b. National Highways connect the state capitals, big cities and important ports.
- c. State Highways join the state capitals with district headquarters.
- d. District Roads connect the district centres with the major roads.
- e. Other Rural Roads which link rural areas and villages with towns.
- f. Border Roads have increased accessibility in areas of difficult terrain.
- g. Projects related to Super Highways are being implemented by the NHAI.

53. What is the significance of 'Border Roads'? explain.  
[CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

- Border Road Organization was established in 1960.
- This organization develops the roads of strategic importance in the North and the East border areas.
- These roads have improved accessibility in areas of difficult terrain.
- These roads have enabled the economy to develop in the border areas.

54. Describe any two merits of railways and any two problems being faced by the railways.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

The railways are the main artery of inland transport in India:

- Railways are the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers.
- Railways are useful in conducting business, sightseeing, pilgrimage along with transportation of goods over long distances.
- Railways in India bind the economic life of the country as well as accelerate the development of the industry and agriculture.

The following problems are being faced by the railways:

- Poor service offered by railways.
- Thefts and damaging railway property.
- Pressure of population puts enormous strain on existing infrastructure.

55. Pipeline transport network is a new arrival on the transportation map of India." Explain. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

- Previously, these were used to transport water to cities and industries.
- Presently these are used to transport crude oil, petroleum products and natural gas.
- Initial cost of laying pipelines is high but running costs are minimal.
- It rules out delay and losses. Some networks are from oilfield in upper Assam to Kanpur.

56. Name the longest National Waterway of India. Write any three points of importance of waterways.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

The longest National Waterway of India is the Ganga river between Allahabad and Haldia. Importance of waterways:

- It is most suitable for carrying heavy and bulky goods.
- It is a fuel efficient and environment friendly.
- More than 95% of the country's trade volume is moved by the sea.
- It is the cheapest means of transport.
- They are the natural routes which do not involve cost of construction. (Any four)

57. Explain any five characteristics of Kandla Seaport.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Characteristics of Kandla seaport:

- First port developed soon after India got independence.

- Reduced the volume of traffic on Mumbai port.
- Tidal port.
- Caters to exports and imports of highly productive granary and industrialised states.
- Free trade zone.

58. Explain any five merits of Air transport.[CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Merits of Air Transport are:

- It is the most comfortable mode of transport.
- It is the fastest mode.
- It is the prestigious mode of transport.
- It can cover very difficult terrains like high mountain and dreary deserts.
- Dense forests and oceans are not problems for air transport. It covers them with great ease. ●

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

## Power Sharing

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. How and when was Sinhala recognized as the official language of Sri Lanka?

**Ans :** (CBSE S.R 2017)  
Sinhala was recognized as the official language of Sri Lanka by passing an Act in 1956.

2. What does the system of 'checks and balances' ensure in power sharing?

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]  
That none of the organs of the government can exercise unlimited power.

3. Mention any one characteristics of power sharing.

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]  
It gives the people right to be consulted or any other characteristics.

4. Which factor is responsible for increasing the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
Majoritarianism.

5. Which type of powers does the Community Government of Belgium enjoy? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**  
This government has the power regarding culture, education and language related issues.

6. What is the state religion of Sri Lanka? [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**  
Buddhism.

7. Who formed the majority in terms of population in Sri Lanka? [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**  
Sinhala community.

8. What measure was adopted by the democratically elected government of Sri Lanka to establish Sinhala supremacy?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]  
Majoritarian measure.

9. What is the prudential reason behind power sharing. [CBSE 2014]

or  
Why power sharing is good for democracies?

**Ans :**  
It reduces the possibility of conflict between social groups.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

10. Explain any three consequences of the majoritarian policies adopted by the Sri Lankan government.

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]  
Consequences of majoritarian policies adopted by Sri Lankan Government.

- a. Tamils felt the government was not sensitive about Tamil language and culture.
- b. Tamils felt discriminated against in jobs and education.
- c. Tamils felt the government was practising religious discrimination.
- d. Relations between Tamils and Sinhalese became strained.

11. "Sharing of powers makes a country more powerful and united." Do you agree with this statement and why? [CBSE S.R 2016-17]

or  
"Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy". Justify this statement with three suitable points. [CBSE 2012]

or  
How far do you agree with the statement that power sharing is keeping with the "Spirit" of democracy?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]  
Power sharing keeps up with the 'Spirit' of Democracy as:

- a. Power sharing ensures that all people have stake in government.
- b. Power sharing ensures maximum participation. It upholds the concept of people's rule. It always brings better outcomes in democracy. It ensures the political stability in democracy.
- c. Power sharing accommodates diverse groups. It helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.

12. Describe the power sharing arrangement made by



Belgium. [CBSE 2014]

or

Explain any three elements of the Belgium model of power sharing.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016-17]

The main elements of the Belgium model of power sharing includes:

- Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the Central Government. Some special laws require the support of majority of members from each linguistic group. Thus, no single community can make decisions unilaterally.
- Many powers of the Central Government have been given to State Governments of the two regions of the country. The State Governments are not subordinate to the Central Government.
- Brussels had a separate government in which both the communities have equal representation. The French speaking people accepted equal representation in Brussels because the Dutch-speaking community has accepted equal representation in the Central Government.

13. What is power sharing? Why power sharing is important in a democracy? [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

- When the power does not rest with any one organ of the state rather it is shared among legislature, executive and judiciary, it is called power sharing.
- Power sharing is important in a democracy because :
  - It helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.
  - It is the very spirit of democracy.
  - It is a good way to ensure the stability of the political order.

14. How can power be shared among governments at different levels? Explain. [CBSE 2014]

or

Explain the vertical division of power giving example from India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Vertical division of power: Vertical division of power means sharing of power among governments at different levels.

In India, there are three levels of the government:

- For the entire country: Central Government/ Union Government.
- At the provincial level: State Governments.
- At the local level (i.e., rural and urban): Local self governments like panchayats and municipal councils.

15. Describe any three majoritarian measures adopted by the Sri Lankan Government to establish Sinhala supremacy. [CBSE 2013, 2012]

or

Describe any three provisions of the Act which was passed in Sri Lanka in 1956 to establish Sinhala supremacy. [CBSE 2012]

or

Why did the Sri Lankan Tamils feel alienated in spite of their long stay in Sri Lanka? [CBSE 2012]

or

Explain three measures taken by Sri Lanka, according to an Act passed in 1956. [CBSE 2012]

or

Which three provisions of the Act passed in Sri Lanka in 1956 established Sinhala supremacy? [CBSE 2012]

or

Why Sri Lankan Tamils felt alienated? [CBSE 2011]

or

What were the reasons for the alienation of Sri Lankan Tamils? What was the effect of this on the country?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011, 2010]

Sri Lankan Tamils felt alienated because:

- Government adopted majoritarian measure to establish Sinhala Supremacy. In 1956, an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language thus disregarding Tamil.
- The governments followed preferential politics that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.
- A new Constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism.
- Sri Lankan Tamils felt that none of the major political parties led by the Buddhist Sinhala leaders were sensitive to their language and culture.
- As a result, the relations between the Sinhala and Tamil communities strained overtime and it soon turned into a Civil War.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

16. Explain any three consequences of the majoritarian policies adopted by the Sri Lankan Government.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Consequences of majoritarian policies adopted by Sri Lankan Government were:

- Tamils felt the government was not sensitive about Tamil language and culture because Sinhala was declared the official language.
- Tamils felt discriminated against securing jobs and education which were given preferentially to the Sinhala speakers.
- Tamils felt the government was practising religious discrimination because the State fostered Buddhism. Relations between Tamils and Sinhalese became strained.

17. Which three demands of the Sri Lankan Tamils accepted and met with, can settle the ethnic conflict in Sri Lanka for good? Explain. [CBSE 2012]

or

18. Mention any three demands of Sri Lankan Tamils.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Demands of the Tamils:

1. Recognition of Tamil as an official language.
2. Equal opportunities for Tamils in government jobs and educational institutions.
3. Provincial autonomy for Tamil dominated provinces.

19. Compare the different ways in which the Belgians and the Sri Lankans have dealt with the problem of cultural diversity. [CBSE 2012, 2011]

**Ans :**

The Belgian leaders recognised the existence of regional and cultural diversities.

- a. They amended their Constitution four times so as to work out an innovative arrangement that would enable everyone to live together in peace and harmony, i.e., there was sharing of power between the Dutch and the French both in the Central Government, State Government and Community Government. They followed a policy of accommodation.
- b. This helped to avoid civic strife and division of the country on linguistic lines.
- c. On the other hand, the Sinhalese who were in majority in Sri Lanka as compared to the Tamils followed a policy of majoritarianism and adopted a series of measures to establish Sinhala Supremacy by passing an Act of 1956. These measures alienated the Tamils leading to civic strife between the two communities.

20. Give reasons why power sharing is desirable. [CBSE S.R 2015,2012]

or

Why power sharing is necessary in democracy? Explain.

[CBSE 2011]

or

Write one prudential and one moral reason for power sharing. [CBSE 2011]

or

Why is power sharing desirable? Explain moral reasons in this regard. [CBSE 2012]

or

Why power sharing is desirable? Explain giving any three prudential reasons.

[CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Power sharing is desirable in democracy because:

- (i) Prudential reasons:

- (a) It helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups. Since social conflict often leads to violence and political instability.
- (b) It is a good way to ensure the stability of political order.
- (c) Imposing the will of majority community over others may look like an attractive option in the short run, but in the long run it undermines the unity of the nation.

- (ii) Moral reasons:

- (a) Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy. A democratic rule involves sharing power with those affected by its exercise and who have to live with its effect.

- (b) People have a right to be consulted on how they are to be governed.
- (c) A legitimate government is one where citizens through participation, acquire a stake in the system.

21. Describe horizontal and vertical power sharing in modern democracies.

or

Differentiate between horizontal and vertical division of powers. [CBSE 2011]

or

What is horizontal distribution of power? Mention its any two advantages. [CBSE S.R 2016-17, 2012]

or

Why is horizontal distribution of power Often referred to as a system of “checks and balances”? Explain. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

	Horizontal Division of Power	Vertical Division of of power
1	Horizontal division of power is such a power sharing arrangement in which power is shared among different organs of government, such as legislature, executive and judiciary.	In vertical division of powers, power can be shared among governments at different levels like union, state and local levels of government, i.e., it involves higher and lower levels of the government.
2	In horizontal division of power, different organs of government exercise different powers. This is a concept of separation of powers.	In vertical division of powers, constitution clearly lays down the power of different levels of the government.
3	Horizontal distribution specifies the concept of checks and balances in order to check the exercise of unlimited powers of the organs.	There is no concept of checks and balances, because powers are clearly given by the constitution from the higher level to the lower level.

22. In modern democracies, power is often shared among different organs of the government. Explain.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2011]

Power is shared between different organs of the government such as Legislature, Executive and Judiciary. This system of power sharing is referred to as a system of ‘checks and balances’ because: All three organs are placed at the same level of power. The power distribution ensures that no organ enjoys unlimited powers. Each organ exercises a check on the others. Thus there is a balance of power.

23. Explain how power is shared among different organs of the government. [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Power is shared among different organs of government i.e., Legislature, Executive and Judiciary

- a. Legislature: The legislature is concerned with passing the laws, controlling the finances of the state and delivering on matter of public importance.
- b. Executive: The executive machinery implements the policies of the government and executes the rules made by the legislature bodies.
- c. Judiciary: The judiciary is concerned with the interpretation of the laws and has the power to punish those who commit crimes or break the laws. The judiciary can also check the functioning of the executives.

representation in the Central Government.

4. Apart from the central and the state government, there is a third kind of government called the Community Government.
5. This community government is elected by people belonging to one language community—Dutch, French and German-speaking. This government has the power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

24. How majoritarianism has increased the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils? Explain. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Sri Lankan Tamils felt alienated because:

1. Government adopted majoritarian measure to establish Sinhala Supremacy. In 1956, an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only , official language thus disregarding Tamil.
2. The governments followed preferential politics that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.
3. A new Constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism.
4. Sri Lankan Tamils felt that none of the major political parties led by the Buddhist Sinhala leaders were sensitive to their language and culture.
5. As a result, the relations between the Sinhala and Tamil communities strained overtime and it soon turned into a Civil War.

25. Explain how Belgium was able to solve its ethnic problem. [CBSE 2013]

or

Explain the power sharing arrangement in Belgium.

[CBSE 2011]

or

State the main elements of the power sharing model evolved in Belgium.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2011]

The main elements of the power-sharing model evolved in Belgium were:

1. Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the Central Government. Some special laws require the support of majority of members from each linguistic group. Thus, no single community can make decisions unilaterally.
2. Many powers of the Central Government have been given to State Governments of the two regions of the country. The State Governments are not subordinated to the Central Government.
3. Brussels had a separate government in which both the communities have equal representation. The French- speaking people accepted equal representation in Brussels because the Dutch speaking community has accepted equal

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Why was States Reorganization Commission formed?

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]  
States Reorganization Commission was formed in 1954 to recommend creation of States on the linguistic basis.

2. How do the Central and State Governments enjoy their power in federal system?

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]  
Under the unitary system, either there is only one level of government or the subunits are subordinate to the central government whereas in federal system, power is distributed between centre and state.

3. In which list of the Indian Constitution does education come? Why?

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]  
Education comes under concurrent list so that both the centre and the states can legislate on any aspect of education.

4. What status has been given to Hindi by the Constitution of India?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
Official language of the country.

5. Much of the official work in Indian states is done in which language? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**  
Much of the official work is done in the official language of the concerned State.

6. Name the country which follows 'coming together' style of federalism. [CBSE S.R 2014]

**Ans :**  
USA, Switzerland and Australia.

7. Which subjects are included in the Union List?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]  
Defence of the nation, foreign affairs, banking, currency, communication.

8. Which local body has a 'Mayor' as its head?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]  
Municipal Corporation

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

9. Describe any three provisions of amendment made in Indian constitution in 1992 for making 'Three-Tier'

government more effective and powerful.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

- Now it is constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
- Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes.
- At least one-third of all positions are reserved for women.
- An independent institution called the State Election Commission has been created in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
- The state governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

10. "India has a large cultural, regional and religious diversity. But there is unity among people". What factors are responsible for this? Elaborate.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016-17]

- Right to equality.
- No discrimination on the basis of caste, creed, region or religion.
- SCs & STs have some seats reserved and do get representation.
- Right to freedom of religion and cultural and educational rights.

11. Explain the factors that make federal government in India so attractive.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2017]

- Mobilization
- Administrative knowledge of the people at all the levels.
- Efficacy to solve all kinds of issues at respective levels.

12. How has the Panchayati Raj strengthened the democracy in India ? Express your views.

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]

Panchayati Raj is the best example of decentralisation



of power.

- People can get most of their problems solved at the local level.
- People can think and plan for themselves.

13. Highlight any three steps taken by India towards making it a federation. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

- Reorganisation of states on linguistic basis.
- Centre-state relations
- Decentralisation or any other relevant point.

14. Highlight three major distinctions between the federations of 'coming together' type and 'holding together' type.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Holding Together Federation:

- Large country decides to divide its power between states and the centre.
- Central government tends to be more powerful.
- Federating units have unequal power.
- India, Spain, Belgium.

Coming Together Federation

- Independent states coming together on their own to form a bigger unit.
- All the states have equal power and are strong.
- By pooling sovereignty and retaining identity; they increase their security.
- U.S.A., Switzerland, Australia (Any three differences)

15. Differentiate between Gram Sabha and Gram Panchayat.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Gram Panchayat is a council consisting of several ward members often called panch and a head or Sarpanch. It is the decision making body for the village. The Panchayat works under the overall supervision of the gram sabha. All the voters in the village are its members.

16. Do you take decentralisation as means to minimise the conflicts? Give your view point? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Yes, it helps in the settlement of a large number of problems and issues at the local level.

It provides a platform for the direct participation of people in decision making. In another way, decentralisation in the form of 'Local Self government' is the best way to realise principles of Democracy.

17. What are the three lists given in the Constitution? [CBSE 2014]

or

Describe the three-fold distribution of legislative power between the Union Government and State Governments of India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

The three-fold distribution of legislative powers:

- Union list: Union lists consist of 97 subjects. It includes subjects of national importance such as defence of the country, foreign affairs, banking, communication and currency.
- State list: State list consists of 66 subjects. It contains subjects of state and local importance

such as police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation.

- Concurrent list: Concurrent list consist of 47 subjects It includes subjects of common interest to both such as education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption and succession.

18. Describe the three-tier system of Indian federation?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Three-tier system means three levels of government.

The Indian Constitution was originally provided for a two-tier system of government:

- The Union Government or the Central Government, and
- The State Governments
- But, later a third-tier of federalism was added in the form of Panchayats at rural level and Municipalities at urban level. Every level enjoys separate jurisdiction.

19. Do you take decentralisation as means to minimise the conflicts? [CBSE 2015]

or

Describe the significance of decentralisation.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Importance of Decentralisation

- It helps in the settlement of a large number of problems and issues at the local level
- It provides a platform for the direct participation of people in decision-making
- In another way, decentralization in the form of 'local self government' is the best way to realise principles of Democracy.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

20. Explain any five features of Panchayati Raj system in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE S.R 2016-17]

Rural local government is known as Panch ay ati Raj.

- PRI is rural-based.
- Each village has Gram Panchayat.
- It has Panchs and a Sarpanch.
- He/She is directly elected by the adult population living in the village.
- Panchayat works under the Gram Sabha.
- All the voters meet at least twice or thrice in a year.
- Few gram panchayats form Panchayat Samiti or Block or Mandal.

21. Explain any five provisions of the Constitutional Amendment of 1992 that strengthened the third tier of government in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016-17]

The Constitution was amended in 1992 to make the third tier of democracy more powerful and effective.

- Now it is mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
- Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for SC, ST and OBCs.
- At least 1/3rd of all positions and seats are

reserved for women.

- d. An independent institution called State Election Commission has been created in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
- e. The State Governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies. The nature of sharing varies from state to state.

**22.** Differentiate between 'Coming together Federation' and 'Holding Together Federation', with examples.

[CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Difference between 'Coming Together Federation' and 'Holding Together Federation':

- a. 'Coming Together Federations' are formed when independent states come together to form a bigger state and 'Holding Together Federations' are formed when a large country decides to divide itself into sub-units.
- b. In 'Coming Together Federations' the state governments are strong, whereas in 'Holding Together Federations', the central government is strong.
- c. In 'Coming Together Federations', all states governments have equal powers but in 'Holding Together Federations', this may not be the case.
- d. Examples of 'Coming Together Federations'—U.S.A., Switzerland and Australia. Examples of 'Holding Together Federations'—India, Spain and Belgium.

**23.** Explain any five key features of federalism. [CBSE 2014]

or

Describe the main features of federalism. [CBSE 2014]

or

Enlist any five features of federalism.

[CBSE S.R 2013, 2012]

or

Mention any five main features which makes India a federal country. [CBSE S.R 2012, 2011]

**Ans :**

Main Features of Federalism:

- a. There are two or more levels of government. India has three levels.
- b. Each level of government has its own jurisdiction in matters of legislation, taxation and administration even though they govern the same citizens.
- c. Power and functions of each tier of government is specified and guaranteed by Constitution.
- d. The Supreme Court has been given power to settle disputes between different levels of governments.
- e. Fundamental provisions of the Constitution cannot be altered by any one level of government. It applies to India also.
- f. Sources of revenue between different levels is specified by the Constitution.
- g. There is mutual trust and agreement between the government at different levels.

**24.** Why has federalism succeeded in India? Which were the policies adopted by India that ensured this success? Explain.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2014]

Federalism has succeeded in India due to the nature of democratic policies in our country. The policies adopted by India for smooth functioning of a federal structure: Linguistic States: After independence, the boundaries of several old states were changed in order to create new states. The creation of linguistic states was the first and a major test for democratic politics in our country.

Language Policy:

The second test for the Indian federation is the language policy, The Indian constitution did not give the status of national language to any one of the language.

Centre-State Relations: Restructuring the centre-state relations is one more way in which federalism has been strengthened in practice.

Decentralisation of Power:

Power in India has been decentralised to the local government. The local government includes Panchayats in villages and municipalities in urban areas.

**25.** How is a federal government different from the unitary form of government? Why are federations preferred these days? [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Difference:

- a. Unitary government has only one level of government whereas a federal government has two or more levels of government.
- b. In unitary government, the sub-units are subordinate to the centre, whereas in a federation, central government cannot encroach on the rights of state governments.
- c. In unitary system, centre can order the sub-units which cannot happen in federation.

A federation is preferred because:

- a. It helps in making administration effective and efficient.
- b. It helps to accommodate all diverse groups.

**26.** How are the powers divided between the states and centre? Explain with examples. [CBSE 2012]

or

Describe the three-fold distribution of legislative powers between the Union Government and State Governments of India. [CBSE 2012]

or

Describe the three-fold distribution of legislative powers between the Union Government and the State Governments. Who can make laws on the subjects which are not covered under these lists and what name has been given to such subjects? [CBSE 2011]

or

Describe the division of powers between the Central and the State Governments in India.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2011]

The three-fold distribution of legislative powers:

- a. Union list: Union lists consist of 97 subjects. It includes subjects of national importance such as defence of the country, foreign affairs, banking, communication and currency.
- b. State list: State list consists of 66 subjects. It contains subjects of state and local importance

such as police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation.

- c. Concurrent list: Concurrent list consists of 47 subjects. It includes subjects of common interest to both such as education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption and succession.

Union Government can make laws on the subjects which are not covered under these lists. The name has been given to such subjects is residuary subjects.

27. Why did the makers of our Constitution declare India to be a 'Union of States'? Why were some sub-political units of India given a special status?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015, 2012]

- a. India became a Union of States because it consisted of both British-ruled territories as well as many princely states. Some sub-political units of India have a special status.
- b. French and Portuguese-ruled territories were given the status of Union territory.
- c. Jammu & Kashmir joined India on a special condition.
- d. Some units were too small to become independent states. They were made Union Territories.
- e. States in the north-east have been given a special status as they have a large tribal population with a distinct history and culture.

28. What challenges did centre-state relations in India face before the 1990's? Why is power sharing between centre and state more effective today? [CBSE 2012]

or

Describe the centre-state relations in Indian Federalism. [CBSE 2011]

or

How have the centre-state relations been restructured to strengthen federalism? [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

Challenges before 1990:

- a. Political scene was dominated by one party both at the Centre and in the States.
- b. As and when the ruling party at the state level was different, the parties that ruled at the Centre tried to undermine the power of the States.
- c. The Central Government would often misuse the constitution to dismiss the State Government that were controlled by rival parties.

After 1990:

- a. Now the Centre and majority of State Governments belong to different political parties in coalition.
- b. A number of regional parties have become powerful and play a crucial role at the Centre and States.
- c. The era of "coalition" government at the Centre has inculcated respect for federal autonomy,

29. "Holding together federations" do not give equal power to its constituent units.' Explain the statement with the help of examples in context to India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- a. All states in the Indian Union do not have identical powers. For example, Jammu and Kashmir enjoys a special status and has its own constitution.
- b. Many provisions of the Indian Constitution do not apply here.

- c. Indians who are not the permanent residents of Jammu and Kashmir cannot buy land or house there.
- d. Smaller units called Union Territories do not have the powers of a state. The Central Government has special powers in running these areas.

30. Explain five changes towards decentralisation brought in the Constitution after the Amendments made in 1992.

[CBSE 2012]

or

What is the meaning of decentralisation? Explain any four provisions that have been made towards decentralisation in India after the Constitutional Amendment in 1992. [CBSE S.R 2012, S.R 2016-17]

or

Which five provisions of the Constitutional Amendment of 1992 strengthen the third tier of democracy in India? Explain. [CBSE 2012]

or

Explain any four provisions that have been made towards decentralisation in India after the Constitutional Amendment in 1992? [CBSE 2011]

or

What is meant by "decentralisation of powers"? Explain the importance of local self government in the light of decentralization. [CBSE 2011]

or

How has the third tier of government in our country been made more effective and powerful by the constitutional amendment of 1992? [CBSE 2011]

or

Describe any four Constitutional steps taken in 1992 towards decentralisation in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011, 2010]

Decentralisation: When power is taken from 'Central and State Governments and is given to the local government, it is called decentralisation. The Constitution was amended in 1992 to make the third tier of democracy more powerful and effective. Provisions of the Constitutional Amendment of 1992 are:

- a. Now it is mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
- b. Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for SCs, STs and OBCs.
- c. At least one-third of all positions are reserved for women.
- d. An independent institution called State Election Commission has been created in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
- e. The state governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies.

31. What is the rationale for decentralization of power? Explain the structure of Rural local government in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

The basic idea behind decentralisation:

- a. Large number of problems and issues are best settled at the local level because people have better knowledge of their local problems.
- b. It helps in promoting direct participation.

Structure of Rural Local Government:

1. Zilla Parishad: All the mandals in a district together constitute the Zilla Parishad. Most of the members are elected and headed by a chairperson.
2. Panchayat Samiti or Mandal or Block: The members of this body are elected by the entire Panchayat members in that area. A few Gram Panchayats are grouped together to form this government body.
3. Gram Panchayat: A council consisting of several ward members often called Panch. The president is called sarpanch. It is the decision-making body for the entire village.

- a. Sharing of power between centre and states and local government reduces conflict.
- b. Large number of problems and issues can be best settled at local level. People have better knowledge of problems in their localities.
- c. People have better knowledge of their own problems.
- d. They know better on where to spend money and how to manage things efficiently.
- e. People at the local level can participate directly in decision making.

32. What is a Gram Sabha? Describe any four functions of a Gram Sabha. [CBSE 2012]

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

**Ans :**

Gram Sabha: A body comprising of all adult members of a village or a group of villages Functions of Gram Sabha are:

- a. It elects the members of the Gram Panchayat.
- b. The Gram Sabha supervises the work of the village panchayat.
- c. It approves the annual budget of the panchayat.
- d. It reviews the performance of the Gram Panchayat.

33. "Local governments have made a significant impact on Indian democracy. At the same time there are many difficulties." Explain. [CBSE 2013, 2012]

**Ans :**

Impact of local self government on Indian democracy:

- a. Constitutional status for local government has helped to deepen democracy.
- b. It has increased women's representation and voice in our democracy.

Difficulties:

- a. Gram Sabhas are not held regularly.
- b. Most state governments have not transferred significant powers to local government.
- c. State governments do not provide adequate resources.

34. Assess the need for local government.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Need for local government: There are a number of problems and issues that are best settled at the local level, because people have a better knowledge of the problems in their localities.

- a. The local people are aware of their needs and can prioritize.
- b. It helps to initiate the process of direct decision making.
- c. It helps to inculcate the habit of democratic participation.

Local government is the best way to realize one important principle of democracy, namely local self government.

35. Explain any five advantages of decentralization of power. [CBSE 2012]

or

Analyse the advantages of decentralization.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Advantages of Decentralisation:

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE



File Revision Date : 1 July 2019

CBSE Previous Year Exams Questions Exam 2019-2020

CLASS : 10th

SUB : Social Science

Unit 3 : Democratic Politics - II

For 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank

visit [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) or whatsapp at 8905629969

# CHAPTER 3.5

## Popular Struggles and Movement

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. 'A challenge is not just any problem but an opportunity for progress.' Analyse the statement. [CBSE 2018]

**Ans :**

A challenge is a difficulty that carries within it an opportunity for progress. Once we overcome a challenge we go up to a higher level than before.

2. What does the challenge of expansion faced by established democracies involve? [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

- It involves applying basic principles of democratic governments across all regions, different social groups and various institutions.
- Greater power to local governments.

3. A country holds election to elect peoples representatives to form the government but the elections are not fair. Identify the kind of challenge faced by the people in such a country. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

People face the challenge of expansion of democracy.

4. Which challenge to established democracies ensures more participation of women and minority groups in a democratic country? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

The challenge of expansion.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

5. Elaborate the challenge of expansion of democracy. Give an example. [CBSE 2016]

or

"Most of the established democracies are facing the challenge of expansion." Support the statement with examples. [CBSE 2016]

or

Explain the 'Challenge of Expansion' to democracy.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2012]

Most of the established democracies face the Challenge of Expansion:

- Citizens have great expectations from the government.
- Government tries its best for the upliftment of the society.
- Ensuring greater power to the local government.
- Extension of federal principles to all the units of the federation including women and minority groups.

6. "The challenge of deepening of democracy is being faced by every democracy in one form or another." Support the statement with arguments. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Deepening of democracy:

- Deepening of democracy involves strengthening the institutions and the practices of democracy.
- The ordinary people have different expectations from democracy in different societies.
- It wants more of people's participation and control.
- They want to bring down the control of rich and powerful people in the making of the governmental decision.

7. How would you like to expand the definition of democracy? Explain. [CBSE 2016, 2012]

**Ans :**

Definition of democracy shall be expanded by adding following features:

- The government elected by the people must take all the decisions.
- Elections must offer a choice and fair opportunity to the people to change the current rulers.
- The choice and opportunity should be available to all the people on an equal basis.
- The exercise of this choice must lead to a government limited by the basic rules of the constitution and citizen's rights.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

8. Suggest some broad guidelines that can be kept in mind while devising ways and means for political reforms in India. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Guidelines for political reform:

- Any legal change must carefully look at what results it will have on politics. Sometimes the results may be counter-productive.
- The main focus of political reforms should be on ways to strengthen democratic practice.
- Any proposal for political reforms should think

not only about what is a good solution but also about who will implement it and how?

9. How are the challenges to democracy linked to the possibility of political reforms? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Each challenge in democracy is linked to the possibility of reforms. All the countries do not have same challenges.

- Carefully devised changes in law can help to discourage wrong political practices.
- Democratic reforms are to be carried out by political activists, parties, movements and politically conscious citizens.
- Political participation by ordinary citizen should be there.
- Democratic movements, citizen's organization and media should play an important role.
- Empowerment of people through laws, e.g., RTI.

10. "A challenge is an opportunity for progress". Support the statement with your arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

A challenge is an opportunity for progress because:

- A challenge is not just a problem.
- A challenge is a difficulty that carries within it an opportunity for progress.
- Once we overcome a challenge, we go up to a higher level than before.
- Challenges alone cannot overcome challenges to democracy like inequality, poverty, unemployment illiteracy, regionalism, casteism, communalism, etc.
- Legal constitutional changes and the cooperation of the citizen is the need of the hour.

11. What type of financial reforms should be brought to strengthen democracy and why?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

- The financial accounts of every political party should be made public. These accounts should be made public. These accounts should be examined by government auditors.
- There should be state funding of elections.
- Citizen should be encouraged to give more donations to parties and to political workers such donations should be exempted from income tax.

12. Explain three foundational challenges faced by democracies. [CBSE 2012]

or

How do some countries face foundational challenge of democracy? Explain with example.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013]

Foundational challenge:

- Involves making the transition to democracy and then instituting democratic government.
- This involves bringing down the existing non-democratic regime, keeping military away from controlling government and establishing a sovereign and functional state.
- For example: Democratic Government of Nepal.

13. What are the features of a good democracy?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Features of a good democracy are:

- Rulers are elected by the people to take all decisions.
- Elections give an opportunity and choice to the people.
- Democracy ensures that rights are given to the citizen.

14. Highlight any three challenges that democracy faces in Contemporary India. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Challenges that democracy faces in contemporary India are as follows:

- Challenge of corruption by government ministers and bureaucracy.
- Challenge of caste politics and division of votes on the basis of caste instead of policies.
- Challenge of communal politics leading to voting on the basis of religion.
- Challenge of regionalism leading to disunity of society and country.

15. Explain the challenges faced by countries which do not have a democratic form of government.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- These countries face the foundational challenge of making the transition to democracy and then instituting democratic government.
- They also face the challenge of bringing down the existing non-democratic regime and keeping the military away from controlling the government.
- Such countries have to make great efforts to establish a sovereign and functional state.

16. Suggest any three political reforms to strengthen democracy.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Some of the reforms to strengthen the working of political parties are as follows: Anti-defection law, under which a member would be disqualified, if he/she goes against the directions of the party. Reduction in the influence of money. Cash votes have been banned by the election commission and anybody involved in the process is likely to be punished.

It is important for a candidate to file an affidavit giving details of his property and eliminate cases pending against him/her. The election commission has made it necessary for political parties to hold their organizational elections and file their income tax returns.

A law is strictly advisable to make or regulate the internal affairs of political parties. It should be made mandatory for political parties to give a minimum number of tickets, about one-third, to women candidates.

17. What is a democratic reform. Mention a few broad guidelines for devising political reforms in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

All suggestions or proposals about overcoming various challenges to democracy are called democratic reform or political reform.

Broad guidelines for devising political reforms in India are:

- Legal Ways of reforming politics.
- The Right to Information Act.
- Reforms through political practice,
- Implementation reforms.

18. How is Myanmar facing the foundational challenge of making a transition to democracy? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

There is absence of democracy in Myanmar as the legitimately elected leader Suu Kyi has been under house arrest for more than 15 years.

She has been released recently:

- The army is in power in Myanmar and a democratically elected government is not allowed to function.
- The country faces the challenge of making a transition to democracy and then instituting a democratic government.
- The people of Myanmar need to bring down the military regime and keep it away while they sets up a sovereign and democratic government.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

19. When was the 'Right to Information Act' implemented? How does it act as the watch-dog of democracy? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

'The Right to Information Act' was implemented in 2005.

- It empowers the people to find out what is happening in government.
- It acts as the watchdogs of democracy.
- It helps to control corruption and supplements the existing laws that banned corruption and imposed strict penalties.
- It gives political actors incentives to do good.

20. Explain any five major challenges being faced by the Indian democracy. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Major challenges are:

- Foundational challenge.
- Challenge of expansion.
- Challenge of deepening of democracy. "The main challenge to democracy in India is the challenge of expansion".

Decentralization of powers and applying the basic principle of democratic government across all the regions, have been developed; but still more is to be done. Inclusion of women and minority groups is still a challenge. All the decisions should be in the arena of democratic control. To get this thing to be done and possess is a big challenge.

Some other challenges to democracy include:

- Constitutional design
- Federalism and its functions
- Elections
- Democratic rights.

21. What are the guidelines to be kept in mind while adopting political reforms? [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

The guidelines to be kept in mind while adopting political reforms also include:

- Involving political parties, political activists and people in bringing about reforms rather than imposing reforms through laws.
- Legal measures should be positive, more like incentives.
- Improving the quality of political practices by increasing people's participation.
- Laws being considered may meet with resistance in the legislatures and by political parties.

So, the best way to bring about the change is through democratic movements and media.

22. Explain various type of challenges being faced by the modern democracies of the world? [CBSE 2011]

or

Why do most of the established democracies face the challenge expansion? Give any three reasons.

[CBSE 2011]

or

"Different countries face different kinds of challenges." Support the statement with suitable examples.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

It is true that different countries face different kinds of challenges:

- Non-democratic countries face foundational challenges. This involves bringing down the existing non-democratic regime, keeping military away from controlling government and establishing a sovereign and functional state. Example: In Myanmar, military rule should be challenged. Suu Kyi should be freed and should be elected as the representative of the popular government,
- Every democracy faces the challenge of deepening of democracy. This involves applying the basic principle of democratic government across all the regions, different social groups and various institutions. Example: In Saudi Arabia, women are not allowed to take part in public activities, and no freedom of religion is there for the minorities.
- Every democracy face the challenge of expansion. This involves strengthening of the institutions and practices of democracy. It requires an attempt to bring down that control and influence of the rich and powerful people in making governmental decision. Example: In USA, Black or African-American people have won equal rights, but are still poor, less educated and marginalised.

23. How can the countries facing the foundational challenge of making a transition to democracy set-up a democratic government? Suggest any three measures.

[CBSE 2011]

or

What is a 'challenge'? Explain the three major challenges before the countries of the work regarding democracy.

[CBSE 2010]

or

"The challenge of deepening of democracy is faced by every democracy in one form or another". Support the statement with three suitable arguments. How can democracy be reformed and deepened? Suggest any three guidelines.

**Ans :**

A 'challenge' is a difficulty which carries within it an opportunity for progress. Three major challenge are:

Foundational challenge is about making the transition to democracy and then instituting a democratic government. This involves bringing down the existing non-democratic regime, keeping military away from controlling the government and establishing a sovereign and functional state. Example: Myanmar, Chile, Nepal Challenge of Expansion is faced by most of the established democracies. This involves applying the basic principle of democratic government across all the regions, different social groups and various institutions." Most countries including India and other democracies like the US face this challenge.

**Deepening of democracy:**

This involves strengthening of the institutions and practices of democracy, especially those that help people's participation and control. This attempts to bring down the control and influence of the rich and powerful people in making governmental decision,

24. "Legal reforms may sometimes be counterproductive". Support the statement with suitable arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

- a. Any legal change must carefully look at the results it will have on politics. Sometimes, the results can be counter-productive. For example, many states have banned people who have more than two children from contesting panchayat elections.
- b. This has resulted in the denial of democratic opportunity to many poor men and women, which was not intended. Generally, laws that seek to ban something are not very successful in politics.
- c. The best laws are those which empower people to carry out democratic reforms. For example, Right to Information Act.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.



File Revision Date : 1 July 2019

CBSE Previous Year Exams Questions Exam 2019-2020

CLASS : 10th

SUB : Social Science

Unit 3 : Democratic Politics - II

For 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank

visit [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) or whatsapp at 8905629969

# CHAPTER 3.6

## Political Parties

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Why is one party political system not considered a good democratic system?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Because one party system has no democratic option

2. Why did India adopt multi-party system?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

India adopted multi-party system because:

- India is a large country and has social and geographical diverges.
- It is easy to absorb different social and geographical diversities in a multi-party systems.

3. Name the alliance formed by the Congress Party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

United Progressive Alliance (UPA)

4. Which party was the principal opposition party in Lok Sabha in 2004? [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Bharatiya Janata Party (BJP)

5. Name any one political party that has national level political organization but not recognized as the national political party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Samajwadi Party/Samata Party/Rashtriya Janata Dal.

6. What is meant by 'Political Party'? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

A political party is a group of people come together to contest elections to hold power in the government.

7. What is the guiding philosophy of Bharatiya Janata Party?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

- Cultural nationalism
- India's ancient culture and values

8. What is the requirement laid down by the Election Commission for a political party to be recognized as a 'State Party'? [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

A party that secures at least six percent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognized as a state party.

9. Name any two regional parties of West Bengal.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Two regional parties of West Bengal are:

- Marxist Forward Bloc
- Trinamool Congress

10. If all the decisions of a political party are made by a single family and all other members are neglected, then what challenge is being faced by that party?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Challenge of dynastic succession.

11. Why do political parties involve partisanship?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Because the parties are a part of the society and thus they involve partisanship.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

12. The Bahujan Samaj Party stands for what cause?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Securing the interest of the oppressed people.

13. Analyse the three components of a political party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

or

Describe the three components of a political party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Three components of a political party are:

- Leaders
- Active members
- Followers

14. What is meant by a 'national political party'? State the conditions required to be a national political party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

National political party have units in the various states, they follow the same policies, programmes and strategy that is decided at the national level.

Conditions required:

- A party that secures at least 6% of the total votes in general elections of Lok Sabha or assembly elections in four states.
- Wins at least 4 seats in Lok Sabha.

15. What is a political party ? State any two points of the ideology of Bharatiya Janta Party?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

A political party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government. They agree on some policies and programmes for the society with a view to promote the collective good.

Ideology of BJP:

- Wants full territorial and political integration of Jammu and Kashmir with India.
- A uniform civil code for all people living in the country irrespective of religion.
- Cultural nationalism.

16. Describe about the ideology and organization of Bahujan Samaj Party. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP) was formed in 1984 under the leadership of Kanshi Ram. Its main aim is that it seeks to represent and secure power for the Bahujan Samaj which includes the dalits and adivasis, OBCs and religious minorities.

17. What is meant by regional political party? State the conditions required to be recognized as a 'regional political party'. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

A regional party is a party that is present in only some states.

Conditions required for a party to be recognized as a regional political party are:

- A party that secures at least six percent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a state.
- Wins at least two seats in the Legislative Assembly.

18. "Nearly every one of the state parties wants to get an opportunity to be a part of one or the other national level coalition." Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

State parties seeking national level coalition: Before general election of 2014, in three general elections no one national party was able to secure on its own a majority in Lok Sabha. With the result, the national parties were compelled to form alliances with state or regional parties. Since 1996, nearly every one of the state parties has got an opportunity to be a part of one or the other national level coalition government. This has contributed to the strengthening of federalism and democracy.

19. Which three challenges do you feel are being faced by political parties in India ? Give your Opinion.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

The three challenges faced by political parties in India are:

- Lack of internal democracy.
- Challenge of dynastic succession.
- Growing role of money and muscle power.
- Often parties do not seem to offer a meaningful choice to the voters.

20. Describe any three main features of Two-Party system.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Main features of two-party system:

- Power usually changes between two parties, several other parties may exist.
- In such system, people get clear choice,
- The party that wins majority forms the government and the other sits in opposition.
- Strong opposition is good for democracy.
- Prompt decisions are taken and implemented.
- More development and less corruption.

21. What is a multi-party system? Why has India adopted a multi-party system? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Multi-party system: If several parties compete for power and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a multiparty system.

India adopted a Multi-party system because:

- There is social and geographical diversity in India.
- India is such a large country which is not easily absorbed by two or three parties.
- The system allows a variety of interests and opinions to enjoy political representation.

22. How 'do money and muscle power play an important role in elections? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Money and muscle power play an important role in elections because:

- Role of money and muscle power in parties especially during elections is growing.
- Parties tend to nominate those candidates who have or can raise lots of money.
- Rich people and companies who give funds to the parties tend to have influence on the policies and decisions of the party.
- In some cases, parties support criminals who can win election.
- Democrats all over the world are worried over the increasing role of rich people and big companies in democratic politics. (Any three)

23. "Serious efforts were made by the legal organizations to reform political parties in India." Support the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Efforts made by the legal organizations to reform political parties in India:

- To check defection, the Constitution was amended to prevent elected MLA's and MPs from changing parties.
- The Supreme Court passed an order to reduce the influence of money and criminal, by making it mandatory to produce an affidavit giving details of property and criminal cases pending.
- The Election Commission passed an order making it necessary for political parties to hold their organizational election and file their income tax returns.

24. Name any six 'regional political parties' of the four southern states of India' [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Tamil Nadu—AIADMK (All India Anna Dravida

Munnetra Kazhagam), DMK  
Andhra Pradesh—Telugu Desam,  
Kerala—Congress (Joseph)  
Puducherry—AINRC (All India N. R. Congress)

25. Name the 'regional political parties' that are predominant in Jharkhand, Maharashtra and Odisha respectively with their symbols. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

Jharkhand—JMM—Jharkhand Mukti Morcha  
Maharashtra—INC—Indian National Congress  
Odisha—BJD—Biju Janata Dal.

26. State the conditions as laid down by the Election Commission to recognize a 'state party' and 'national party'. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

The difference between a state and a national party can be identified as follows:

- In a state party, the party members aim to highlight the regional interests. On the other hand, a national party gives due importance to national interests.
- A state party can contest in elections only in a particular state, whereas a national party can contest in elections all across the country.
- Example: BJP and Congress are national parties, whereas Akali Dal and Trinamool Congress are state level parties.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

27. What is meant by 'defection' in democracy? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

- Detection in politics means moving of a person from one party to another party for some personal benefit. It means changing party allegiance from the party on which a person got elected to a different part
- It happens when a legislature, after having been elected from a particular party leaves it and joins in other party.
- The Constitution was amended to prevent elected MLA's and MP's from changing parties. Now the law says that if any MLA and MP changes parties, he or she will lose seat in the legislature.
- The new law has brought defection down and has made dissent even more difficult.

28. Name the national political party which espouses secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities. Mention any four features of that party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013]

The national political party which espouses secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities is the

Indian National Congress.

Four features of this party are listed below:

- Founded in 1885.
- Dominated Indian politics, both at the national and state levels, for several decades after India's independence.
- Ruling party at the centre till 1977 and then from 1980 to 1989. After 1989, its support declined.
- A centrist party (neither rightist nor leftist) in its ideological orientation.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

29. Describe any five major functions of political parties performed in a democracy.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

**Ans :**

In a democracy political parties performed the following major functions:

- Parties contest elections: In most democracies, elections are fought mainly among the candidates put up by political parties. Parties select their candidates in different ways. In India top party leaders choose candidates for contesting elections.
- Parties put forward different policies and programmes and the voters choose from them. In a democracy, a large number of similar opinions have to be grouped together to provide a direction in which policies can be formulated by the governments. A government is expected to base its policies on the line taken by the Ruling party.
- Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country. Formally laws are debated and passed in the legislature. But since most of the members belong to a party, they go by the direction of the party leadership, irrespective of their person ' opinions.
- Parties form and run governments. Parties recruit leaders, train them and then make them ministers to run the government in the way they want.
- Those parties that lose in the elections play the role of opposition to the parties in power by voicing different views and criticising government for its failure or wrong policies.
- Parties shape public opinion. They raise and highlight issues. Parties sometimes also launch movements for the resolution of problems faced by people. Often opinions in the society crystallise on the lines parties take.
- Parties provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes implemented by governments.

30. Examine any two institutional amendments made by different institutions to reform political parties and their leaders. [CBSE 2016]

or

Elucidate some of the recent efforts taken in our country to reform political parties and its leaders.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

- The Constitution was amended to prevent elected MLA's and MP's from changing parties. This

was done because many elected representatives were indulging in defection in order to become ministers or for cash rewards. Now, if any MLA or MP changes parties, he or she will lose the seat in the legislature.

- b. The Supreme Court passed an order to reduce the influence of money and criminals. Now, it is mandatory for every candidate who contests elections to file an affidavit giving details of his property and criminal cases pending against him. The new system has made a lot of information available to the public. But there is no system of check, if the information given by the candidates is true.
- c. The Election Commission passed an order making it necessary for political parties to hold their organizational elections and file their income tax returns.
- d. The parties have started doing so but sometimes it is mere formality. It is not clear if this step has led to greater internal democracy in political parties.

- 31.** Suggest and explain any five measures to reform political parties. [CBSE 2016]

or

Suggest any five effective measures to reform political parties.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015,2012]

Effective measures to reform political parties are :

- a. A law should be made to regulate the internal affairs of political parties.
- b. It should be made compulsory for political parties to maintain a register of its members.
- c. It should be made mandatory for political parties to give a minimum number of tickets; about 1/3rd to its women candidates.
- d. There should be a quota for women in the decision making bodies of the party.
- e. There should be state funding of elections.
- f. The government should give parties money to support their election expenses in kind, for example, petrol, paper, telephone, etc., or in cash.
- g. Vote casting should be made compulsory in each election.
- h. Data regarding caste and religion, OBC, SC, ST should not be utilized during election period in any form.

- 32.** "Political parties are a necessary condition for a democracy." Analyse the statement with examples. [CBSE 2016]

or

Why can't modern democracies exist without the political parties? Explain any four reasons.

**Ans :** [CBSE II, 2015, 2011]

"Political parties are a necessary condition for a democracy" because:

1. Without political parties, democracies cannot exist.
2. If we do not have political parties; in such a situation every candidate in elections will be independent.
3. No one will be able to make any promises to the people about any major policy changes.

4. The government may be formed but its utility will remain uncertain.
5. Elected representatives will be accountable to their constituency for what they do in their locality.
6. But no one will be responsible for how the country will run. .
7. The role of opposition party in a democracy necessitates the existence of political parties.
8. As societies become large and complex they also need some agencies to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government, that's why political parties are needed.

- 33.** "All over the world, people express their dissatisfaction with the failure of political parties to perform their functions well." Analyse the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Popular dissatisfaction and criticism has focused on four areas in the working of political parties. Political parties need to face and overcome these challenges in order to remain effective instruments of democracy.

- a. Lack of internal democracy within parties.
- b. Dynastic succession.
- c. Growing role of money and muscle power in parties.
- d. There is not a meaningful choice to the voter.

- 34.** "No party system is ideal for all countries and all situations." Justify the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

No party system is ideal for all countries and all situations:

- a. Party system is not something, any country can choose.
- b. It evolves over a long time depending on the nature of the society.
- c. Its social and regional divisions, its history of politics and its system of elections.
- d. Each country develops a party system that is conditioned by its special circumstances.

- 35.** What is meant by a political party? Describe the three components of a political party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Political Party is a group of people who came together to contest elections and hold power in the government. Three components of a political party are:

- a. The leaders
- b. The active members
- c. The followers

- 36.** Describe any five major functions of political parties.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Functions of political parties:

- a. Parties contest elections.
- b. They put forward policies and programmes.
- c. Parties play a decisive role in making laws.
- d. Parties form and run government.
- e. Defeated parties in the election play its role of opposition to the parties in power.
- f. Parties shape public opinion.
- g. Parties provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes.



37. “Lack of internal democracy within parties is the major challenge to political parties all over the world.” Analyse the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016, 2015]

There are various reasons for lack of democracy within the political parties in India:

- Concentration of power in one or few leaders at the top.
  - Details of membership are not registered in the parties.
  - No organizational meetings.
  - No internal elections for membership within the party.
  - Top leaders have unanimous power of decision making.
38. “Dynastic succession is one of the most serious challenges before the political parties.” Analyse the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Dynastic succession is one of the most serious challenges before the political parties because:

- Most political parties do not practice open and transparent procedures for their functioning.
- There are few ways for an ordinary worker to rise to the top in a party.
- In many parties, the top positions are always controlled by members of one family.
- This practice is unfair to other members of that party and is also bad for a democracy.
- People who do not have adequate experience or popular support come to occupy position of power.

39. Name the national political party which gets inspiration from India’s ancient culture and values. Mention four features of that party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013]

‘Bharatiya Janata Party’ (BJP) gets inspiration from India’s ancient culture and values.

Four important features:

- Cultural nationalism or ‘Hindutva’ is an important element in its conception of Indian nationhood and politics.
- The party wants full territorial and political integration of Jammu and Kashmir with India.
- A uniform civil code for all people living in the country irrespective of religion and ban on religious conversions.
- Its support base increased substantially in the 1990s.

40. Explain two functions each of the ruling party as well of the opposition parties.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Functions of the ruling parties:

- They play a major role in making laws for the country.
- They form the government and run the country.
- They recruit leaders, train them and then make ministers to run the government.

Functions of the opposition parties:

- They oppose the government by voicing different views.

- They criticise government for its failure and wrong policies.
- They mobilise opposition to the government.

41. How do political parties help in shaping public opinion? Explain. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Role of political parties in shaping public opinion as:

- They raise and highlight issues.
- They form pressure groups as an extension.
- They launch movement for the resolution of problems faced by the people.
- They have lakhs of members and activists.

42. What do you understand by the bi-party system? Write its one merit and one demerit.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Bi-party system:

- In some countries, power usually changes between two main parties. It is also known as two party system.
- In this system, the government is formed by one party and the other plays the role of opposition.

Merit: This system allows stability of government as no coalition is there. Demerit: In this system, only two main parties have a serious chance of winning majority seats to form the government.

43. What is a multi-party system? Explain merits and demerits of multi-party system.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

If several parties compete for power and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a multi-party system.

Merits:

- This system allows a variety of interests and opinions to enjoy political representation.
- People can make a choice between several candidates.

Demerits:

- No one party is likely to gain power alone. Therefore, it leads to difficulty in formation of government.
- Leads to political instability and often appears to be very messy.

44. What is meant by national parties? State the criteria for recognizing a party as National and State party.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Democracies that follow a federal system all over the world tend to have two kinds of political parties— Parties that are present in only one of the federal units and parties that are present in several or all units of the federation. Those parties which are countrywide parties are called national parties.

National and State Parties:

- A party that secures at least six percent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognized as a state party.
- A party that secures at least six percent of the total votes in Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in four states and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognized as a national party.

45. Explain any four problem areas in the working of political parties.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- Lack of internal democracy: The first challenge is lack of internal democracy within parties. Concentration of power in one or few leaders at the top.
- Dynastic succession: Favour people close to them or even their family members. In many parties, the top positions are always controlled by members of one family.
- Money and muscle power: The third challenge is about growing role of money and muscle power in parties, especially during elections.
- Meaningful choice: The fourth challenge is that very often parties do not seem to offer a meaningful choice to the voters.

46. Why is there a lack of internal democracy within the political parties in India? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

There are various reasons for lack of democracy within the political parties in India:

- Concentration of power in one or few leaders at the top.
- Details of membership are not registered in the parties.
- No organizational meetings.
- No internal elections for membership within the party.
- Top leaders have unanimous power of decision making.

47. "Political parties play a major role in democracy." Explain any five points to justify this statement.

[CBSE 2012]

or

"Political parties are rightly called the government in disguise." Justify the statement in reference to democratic politics by giving five arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

The political parties play an important role in democracy as:

- Parties contest election: In most democracies elections are fought mainly among the candidates put up by political parties.
- Parties put forward different policies and programmes and the voters choose from them.
- Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country.
- Parties shape public opinions. They raise and highlight issues.
- Parties form and run governments.
- Role of opposition: Opposition role is important in democracy as it voices different views and criticizes government for its failures or wrong policies.
- Parties provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes implemented by governments.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

File Revision Date : **18 September 2019**  
**CBSE Previous Year Exams Questions Exam 2019-2020**  
**CLASS : 10th**  
**SUB : Social Science**  
**Unit 3 : Democratic Politics - II**  
 For 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank  
 visit [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) or whatsapp at 8905629969

# CHAPTER 3.7

## Outcome Of Democracy

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

- What is meant by economic inequality?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
 It refers to disparities in the distribution of economic assets and income.
- In which area does democracy fail to achieve the same results as in dictatorship?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
 Economic development.
- Which system can reduce the possibility of tension and conflict among different groups of society?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
 It is quite true that democracies have a plus point in resolving social differences, diversion and conflicts because they have evolved a mechanism to negotiate the differences.
- Which form of government is better- democratic or non-democratic?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
 Democratic government is better.
- What is meant by transparency?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
 To examine the process of decision-making in a democracy is known as transparency.
- Why is democratic government better than other alternatives?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
 a. It promotes equality among citizens.  
 b. It enhances the dignity of the individual.
- Which form of government is considered the best?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
 Democratic form of government.
- How does democracy produce an accountable government?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
 Democratic form of government.
- How can you say that democracies are based on political equality?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
 All individuals have equal weight in electing representatives. (Right to Vote)
- Why has political funding become a threat for democracy?  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]  
 Most of the political parties are dependent on money

given by big business houses. That's why the poor and middle classes do not agree to participate in electoral process. Hence, a majority of people keep away from politics and have little voice in politics.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

- When is democracy considered successful? Explain.  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
 Democracy is considered to be successful because:  
 a. The rulers elected by the people must take all major decision and not the rich and powerful.  
 b. The election must offer a free choice and opportunity to the people.  
 c. The choice should be available to all the people based on political equality.
- Establish the relationship between democracy and development.  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
 or  
 Explain the relationship between democracy and development.  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]  
 Relationship between democracy and development are:  
 a. Democracies are expected to produce development.  
 b. Development depends upon many factors, i.e., size of population, global situation, cooperation from other countries, etc. In democracies, time is taken on discussion and reaching at a decision. So, it is slow, but it is not unjust or inappropriate.
- Examine the political outcome of democracy.  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
 a. Right to the citizens to choose their leaders and keep check on them.  
 b. If required people can participate in decision-making either directly or indirectly or through representatives.  
 c. It produces accountable, responsible and legitimate government.
- "Democratic governments in practice are known as accountable." Support the statement with arguments.  
**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]  
 Democratic governments in practice are accountable because:  
 a. It is right to expect democracy to form a government that follows procedures and is accountable to the people.  
 b. It is also expected that the democratic government develops mechanisms for citizens to take part in decision-making whenever they think it as fit.

- c. The democratic government is accountable to the people. If it ignores the will of the people, they will not elect their ruler in the next general election.
- d. The procedures and decision-making process should be transparent for democratic government to be accountable to the people.

15. “Democratic government is legitimate government.” Support the statement with arguments. [CBSE 2016]  
or

Why is democratic government known as legitimate government?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

- a. A democratic government is called legitimate government because it is people’s own government.
- b. It maybe slow, less efficient and not very responsive and clean, but it is people’s government.
- c. There is an overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world. People of South Asia, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, India, Pakistan and Nepal have no doubt about the suitability of democracy for their own country.
- d. People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them. Democracy’s ability to generate its own support makes it more legitimate.

16. “Democracy accommodates social diversities”. Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

“Democracy accommodates social diversities”:

- a. Democracies develop a procedure to conduct their competition. This reduces the possibility of these tensions becoming explosive or violent.
- b. No society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts among different groups. But we can certainly learn to respect these differences and can evolve a mechanism to negotiate these differences.
- c. Ability to handle social differences, divisions and conflicts is thus a definite plus point of democratic regimes.
- d. Example: Belgium has successfully negotiated differences among its ethnic population. This reduces the possibility of tensions.

17. State any three merits of democracy.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Merits of Democracy are:

- a. Democracy assures equality in every spheres of life like political, social and economic.
- b. It upholds basic individual liberties like freedom of speech, etc.
- c. Due obedience to laws.

18. What are the two conditions to accommodate social diversities in a democracy? Mention any one exception to this. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

- a. It is necessary to understand that democracy is not simply rule by majority. The majority always needs to work with minority so that governments function to represent the general view.
- b. It is also necessary that rule by majority does not become rule by majority community in terms of religion or race or linguistic group.

The exception is Sri Lanka where majoritarianism is followed.

19. How is democratic government known as responsive government? Explain with an example. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

A democratic government has to be responsive to the needs of its citizens.

- a. Through pressure groups and public protests, the democratic government can check the popularity of its decisions and mechanism of administering justice.
- b. A government which is able to respond to grievances faster is able to avoid confrontation and provide good governance.

20. “There is overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world.” Support the statement. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

There is an overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world because:

- a. A democratic government is people’s own government.
- b. The evidence from South Asia shows that the support exists in countries with democratic regimes.
- c. People wished to be ruled by representatives elected by them.
- d. People believe that democracy is suitable for their country.
- e. Democracy has the ability to generate its own support which in itself is an outcome that cannot be ignored.

21. What outcomes can one reasonably expect of democracies? [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

The outcomes one can reasonably expect of the democracy are:

- a. In the political sphere—Right to vote, right to contest.
- b. In the economic sphere—minimised economic inequalities.
- c. In the social sphere—Equal protection to women, SCs, STs and OBCs.

22. Discuss any three factors that describe the successful working of democracy in India. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Factors for the success of democracy:

- a. Transparency of democracy.
- b. It is accountable and responsible of ruling.
- c. It provides legitimacy.
- d. It accommodates government of social diversity.
- e. It provides dignity and freedom to the citizens.

23. What are the expected outcomes of democracy? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

The expected outcomes of democracy are as follows:

- a. A government that is chosen and accountable to the people is called democratic government.
- b. A government that is responsive to the needs of



the people.

- c. Economic growth and development reducing all forms of inequality and end of poverty.
- d. Accommodating all social diversities.
- e. Ensuring the dignity and freedom of the individuals.

**24.** How can a democratic government be made accountable? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

A democratic government can be made accountable by:

- a. Conducting discussions and negotiations.
- b. Ensuring transparency.
- c. Holding regular, free and fair elections,
- d. Having open public debates.

**25.** How does a democracy produce an accountable, responsive and legitimate government?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

A democracy produces an accountable, responsive and legitimate government as:

- a. People have a right to choose their rulers and have control over the rulers.
- b. Whenever possible and necessary, they should participate in decision-making on issues that affect them all.
- c. Democracy produces a government which is accountable to the citizens.
- d. Democracy is based on the idea of liberation and negotiation.
- e. Decision-making is based on norms and procedures and its transparency.

**26.** 'It may be reasonable to expect from a democracy a government that is attentive to the needs and demands of the people and is largely free of corruption.' Explain this statement in three points.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Corruption of government:

- a. Democracies often frustrate the needs of people and often ignore the demands of the majority.
- b. The routine tales of corruption are enough to convince us that democracy is not free from this evil.
- c. But a democratic government is people's own government and pays heed to their demands.
- d. People have believed that democracy will be attentive and make policies that will free the country from corruption.

**27.** Are democracies based on political and economic equalities? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Democracy is based on political equality:

- a. All citizens have equal role in electing representatives.
- b. Parallel to the process of bringing individuals into the political arena, we find growing economic inequalities.
- c. Democracy does not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.
- d. The ultra-rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and income.
- e. At the bottom of the society, the people have very

little to depend on.

- f. It is difficult to meet their basic needs of life, such as food, clothing, house, education and health.

**28.** How democracies have been able to reduce poverty? Elaborate. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

- a. Democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities. Although majority of voters constitute the poverty ridden group, yet democratically elected government do not appear to be as keen to address the question of poverty as you would expect them to.
- b. Situation is much worse in some of the countries where people depend upon rich countries for food supplies.
- c. But even then democracy is favoured , because it provides the opportunity to change the rulers.

**29.** Explain the condition under which dignity and freedom of the citizens can be promoted.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

The conditions are as follows:

- a. To promote the dignity and freedom of the citizens, all individuals should be treated as equal. Once this principle is recognised, it becomes easier for individuals to wage a struggle against what is not acceptable legally and morally.
- b. Claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated for equal status and equal opportunity should be strengthened. Inequalities and atrocities lack moral and legal foundations.

**30.** Describe the favourable conditions generally provided to people under a democratic rule.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Favourable conditions generally provided to people under a democratic rule are:

- a. It promotes dignity to everyone irrespective of caste, creed and religion.
- b. It ensures freedom of the individual.
- c. It provides equal status and opportunity.
- d. It provides positive reservation for women and other advantages for discriminated groups.

**31.** Explain any three weaknesses of democracy.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- a. Democracies take more time in decision-making.
- b. Democracies fall short of elections that provide a fair chance to everyone and subjecting every decision to public debate.
- c. The routine tales of corruption are enough to convince that democracies are not free of evil.

**32.** Explain the ways in which democracy can be redefined to make democracy more effective.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Ways in which democracy can be redefined to make democracy more effective:

- a. Ensures that views of minority are respected.
- b. Eliminates caste, religion and gender based discrimination.
- c. People enjoy extensive rights from right to vote to participate in elections.
- d. People enjoy social and economic rights.

33. "Democracy is seen to be good in principle but felt to be not so good in practice." Justify the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013]

Democracy is seen to be good in principles but not in practice because of the following reasons:

- The decision-making process in democracy is time taking, whereby justice delayed is justice denied.
- The tyranny of the majority overrides the will of the minority.
- Corruption and red-tapism dominates the functioning of democracies.
- An illiterate and uninformed electorate fails to give itself a legitimate and accountable government.
- The role of charismatic leaders and dynastic politics dominates political cultures.

34. Describe the role of citizens in a democracy.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

The role of citizens in a democracy are as follows:

- Citizens exercise their rights and freedoms and get benefited from democratic set-up.
- They must be aware of their rights and duties.
- They should be aware of the issues and problems the country is facing.
- They must cooperate in maintaining law and order.
- People must consider other's needs and interest also.

35. "A public expression of dissatisfaction with democracy shows the success of democratic project." Justify the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

"A public expression of dissatisfaction with democracy shows the success of democratic project" as:

- It shows that people have developed awareness and the ability to expect.
- People look critically at power holders. They want to make democracy better.
- They come up with expressions and complaints.
- They value their democratic rights.

36. "Transparency is the most important feature of democracy?" Analyse.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

- Transparency is the most important feature of democracy:
- Democracy ensures that decision-making will be based on certain norms and procedures.
- So, a citizen who wants to know if a decision was taken through correct procedures can find this out.
- The citizen has the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making. This is known as transparency.

37. "Democracies are not appearing to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities." Analyse the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Democracy and the economic outcomes:

- Slow economic development and economic growth due to population.
- Basic needs of life, such as food clothing, shelter are difficult to achieve.

- Prevalence of economic inequalities.
- Poverty is still a big issue.
- Allocation of resources in few hands.
- Unjust distribution of goods and opportunities.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

38. Explain the three factors that are crucial in deciding the outcome of politics of social divisions.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Three factors are crucial in deciding the outcome of politics of social divisions:

- The outcome depends on how people perceive their identities. If people see their identities in singular and exclusive terms, it becomes very difficult to accommodate.
- It is much easier if the people see that their identities are multiple and are complementary with the national identity.
- It depends on how political leaders raise the demands of any community. It is easier to accommodate demands that are within the constitutional framework and are not at the cost of another community.
- It depends on the how the government reacts to demands of the different groups. If the rulers are willing to share power and accommodate the reasonable demands of minority community, social divisions become less threatening for the country.

39. "Democracy stands much superior to any other form of government in promoting dignity and freedom of the individual". Justify this statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

- Democracy stand much superior to any other form of government in promoting dignity and freedom of the individual. The passion for respect and freedom are the basis of democracy. Democracies throughout the world have recognised this, at least in principle.
- This has been achieved in various degrees in various democracies. For societies which have been built for long on the basis of subordination and domination, it is not a simple matter to recognize that all individuals are equal.
- Most societies across the world were historically male dominated societies. Long struggles by women have created some sensitivity today that respect to and equal treatment of women are necessary ingredients of a democratic society.
- In a non-democratic set up, this unacceptability would not have legal basis because the principle of individual freedom and dignity would not have the legal and moral force there.
- Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity.

40. "Democracies lead to a peaceful and harmonious life among citizens." Justify this statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

- It will be a fair expectation that democracy should produce a harmonious social life. Democracy

usually develop a procedure to conduct their competition. This reduces the possibility of these tensions becoming explosive or violent.

- b. No society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts among different groups. But we can certainly learn to respect these differences and we can also evolve mechanism to negotiate the differences. Democracy is best suited to produce' this outcome.
- c. Non-democratic government often turn a blind eye to or suppress internal social differences. Ability to handle social differences, divisions and conflicts is thus a definite plus point of democratic government.
- d. It is necessary to understand that democracy is not simply rule by majority opinion. The majority always needs to work with the minority so that governments function to represent the general view.
- e. It is also necessary that rule by majority does not become rule by majority community in terms of religion or race or linguistic group. Rule by majority means that in case of every decision or in case of every election, different persons and groups may and can form a majority. Democracy remains democracy only as long as every citizen has a chance of being in majority at some point of time.

41. How are complaints treated as testimony to the success of democracy? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

To some extent, complaints are treated as testimony to the success of democracy. We can prove the statement by analysing certain facts like:

- a. Slow and inefficient government: Some people complain that democracy is a less effective government and it is slow in functioning. There is no doubt that non-democratic government can be more effective because they are fast in their decision-making. But it is not certain that decisions are right or wrong.
- b. Unsuccessful in reducing economic exploitation: There is no denying of the fact that democracies do not appear to have been successful in reducing economic inequality. But, it is only possible in a democracy that people can raise their voice against not only economic inequalities, but also against all types of inequalities.

All these facts show that complaints are treated as testimony to the success of democracy.

42. "Democracy stands much superior in promoting dignity and freedom of the citizens". Justify the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

"Democracy stands much superior in promoting dignity and freedom to the citizens":

1. Every individual wants to receive respect from fellow beings.
2. The passion for respect and freedom is the basis of any democracy.
3. Democracies throughout the world have recognized this. It has been achieved in various degrees in

various democracies.

4. Long struggles by women have got them respect and equal treatment.
5. In many democracies, women were deprived of their right to vote for a long time which they have achieved now.
6. In India 1/3rd of seats have been reserved for women in local bodies.
7. Democracy has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity.

43. How are the democratic governments better than the other forms of governments? Compare. [CBSE 2016]

or

"Democracy is a better form of government than any other form of government." Analyse the statement with arguments. [CBSE 2016]

or

Why do we feel that democracy is a better form of government than any other form? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The democratic governments are better than other forms of governments because:

- a. Democratic governments have formal Constitution, while it is not the case in other form of governments.
- b. They hold regular elections, while it is not the case in other form of governments.
- c. They have political parties, whereas there is no such thing in other form of governments.
- d. They guarantee rights to citizens, while it is not the case in the other form of governments.
- e. Such governments allow room to correct mistakes, while it is not there in the other form of government.
- f. Such government accommodates social diversities, while no such thing is there in other form of government.

44. Evidence shows that in practice, many democracies did not fulfill the expectations of producing economic development in the country. Validate the statement with the help of relevant example.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

- a. If we consider all democracies and all dictatorships for the fifty years between 1950 and 2000, dictatorships have slightly higher rate of economic growth.
- b. Economic development depends on several factors : country's population size, global situation, cooperation from other countries, economic priorities adopted by the country, etc.
- c. However, the difference in the rates of economic development between less developed countries with dictatorships and democracies is negligible.
- d. Overall, it cannot be said that democracy is a guarantee of economic development. But we can expect democracy not to lag behind dictatorships in this respect.
- e. With such a significant difference in the rates of economic growth between countries under dictatorship and democracy, it is better to prefer democracy as it has several other positive

outcomes.

For example: North Korea has higher rate of economic growth than India.

45. How is democracy accountable and responsible to the needs and expectations of the citizens? Analyse.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Democracy is accountable and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens because:

- In a democracy, people have the right to choose their representatives and the people will have control over them.
- Citizens have the right to participate in decision-making that affects them all. This ensures that the working of the government is transparent.
- Everybody expects the government to be attentive to the needs and expectations of the people.
- It is expected that the democratic government develops mechanisms for citizens to hold the government accountable.
- The opposition parties can also question and criticize the government policies. They keep a check on the ruling party and make sure that it does not misuse the power.

46. "Some people think that democracy produces a less effective government." Analyse the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

It is true that some people think that democracy produces a less effective government because:

- Non-democratic rulers do not have to bother about deliberation in assemblies or worry about majorities and public opinion.
- They can be very quick and efficient in decision-making and implementation.
- But democracy is based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation. So, some delay is bound to take place.
- Most democracies fall short of elections that provide a fair chance to everyone.
- Democratic governments do not have a very good record when it comes to sharing information with citizens.
- Democracies often frustrate the needs of the people and often ignore the demands of a majority of its population.

47. "Democracy is more effective than its other alternatives." Justify the statement.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Democracy is more effective than its other alternatives:

- Democracy promotes equality among citizens.
- It enhances the dignity of the individual.
- It also improves the quality of decision-making.
- It provides a method to resolve conflicts.
- It gives room to correct mistakes.
- Democratic government is a legitimate government.
- Democracy's ability to generate its own support is itself an outcome that cannot be ignored.

48. Explain with examples, how the dignity and freedom of citizens are best guaranteed in a democracy.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

- Democracies throughout the world have recognized

the fact that people should be treated with due respect. The passion for respect and freedom is the basis of democracy.

- Democracies recognize all individuals as equal. This equality is a big thing for the societies which have been built for long on the basis of subordination and domination.
- Most societies across the world are male-dominated but democracies have created sensitivity that equal treatment of women are necessary ingredients of a democratic society.
- Caste-based inequalities and atrocities are also not acceptable to democracies. All these combined together enhance the dignity and freedom of the individual.

49. "Democracy has failed to reduce economic inequality and poverty." Do you agree? Give arguments in support of your answer.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

In actual life, democracies do not appear to be reducing inequalities.

- The poor constitute a large proportion of our voters and no party likes to lose their votes, yet democratically elected governments have not addressed the question of poverty as one would have expected them to.
- The people in several poor countries are now dependent on the rich countries even for food supplies.

Argument in support:

- It enhances the dignity of the individuals.
- It improves the quality of decision-making.
- It provides a method to resolve conflicts.

50. "A democratic government is efficient and effective." Analyse the statement. [CBSE 2014]

or

"The cost of time that democracy pays is perhaps worth it." Justify.

**Ans :**

- Imagine a government that may take decisions very fast. But it may take decisions that are not accepted by the people and may, therefore, face problems.
- In contrast, the democratic government will take more time to follow procedure before arriving at a decision.
- However, because it has followed procedure, its decisions may be more acceptable to the people and more effective. So, the cost of time that democracy pays is perhaps worth it.

51. "Democracies lead to peaceful and harmonious life among citizens." Support the statement with any three suitable arguments. [CBSE 2013,12]

**Ans :**

The statement is correct that democracy leads to peaceful and harmonious life. Arguments for the statement:

- Democracies accommodate various social divisions.
- Democracies usually develop a procedure to conduct competitions. This reduces the possibility



of these tensions becoming explosive or violent.

- c. No doubt, no society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts among different groups. We can certainly learn to respect these differences.

52. “An ideal government would not only keep itself away from corruption but also make fighting corruption and black money a top priority.” Justify the statement by highlighting the values attached to it.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013]

The three ideal values of a government are legitimacy, responsiveness and accountability. An ideal government would not only keep itself away from corruption but also make fighting corruption and black money a top priority.

This can be justified as follows:

- a. Legitimacy: A government elected by the people is expected to work for their welfare. Corruption and black money are sources of social evils like poverty, inflation and poor political ethics.
- b. Responsiveness: A government is run by the representatives who have the mandates of the people of their constituencies, Such evil practices will demotivate the people to re-elect their representatives,
- c. Accountability: A government is accountable for the management of the polity and its resources. Corruption and black money hinder the optimum allocation of resources.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. State any two goals of development other than income.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

The two goals of development other than income are freedom and security.

2. Why is per capita income calculated in the US dollars?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

Per capita income is calculated in the US dollars because it is the common currency in use in the world market.

3. Give any two common developmental goals of the people.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The two common developmental goals of the people are better income and quality education.

4. Suggest any one way to solve under-employment situation in rural areas.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

To solve the problem of under-employment in the rural areas, the government should help the people in opening their own business by providing bank loans at lower or no interest rate.

5. Mention any one limitation of per capita income as an indicator of development.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Per capita income hides the disparities as it does not tell us how the income is distributed among the people in the country.

6. What is the rank of India as per HDI report of 2004?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The rank of India as per HDI report of 2004 is 126.

7. Define average income.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

It can be defined as the total income of the country divided by the total population.

8. Study the data given below and answer the questions that follow: [CBSE 2014]

**Some comparative data on Punjab, Kerala and Bihar**

State	I n f a n t m o r t a l i t y rate per 1,000 (2003]	Literacy rate [%] (2001]	N e t attendance ratio for classes I -V [1995-96]
Punjab	49	70	81
Kerala	11	91	91

State	I n f a n t m o r t a l i t y rate per 1,000 (2003]	Literacy rate [%] (2001]	N e t attendance ratio for classes I -V [1995-96]
Bihar	60	47	41

Which state appears the most developed?

**Ans :**

Kerala appears the most developed as it is on the top among other criteria of comparison.

9. Which countries are known as rich countries on the basis of per capita income?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012, 2010]

Countries with PCI more than US\$ 12,236 per annum are known as rich countries on the basis of per capita income.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

10. How is the issue of sustainability important for development? Explain with three examples.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

Development, at present, without harming the environment and also keep it safe for the future generation is termed as sustainable development.

- a. Groundwater, which is a renewable resource, is getting depleted because of its overuse. People are facing problem of water crisis due to its indiscriminate use.
- b. The development emerged from the fast industrialisation leads to the cutting of forest and its result is the polluted- environment for the present as well as for the future generations.
- c. The crude oil which is a non-renewable resource with limited stock is depleting gradually. So we need to use it wisely.

11. "People have conflicting development goals". Support

the statement with examples. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

Sometimes the developmental goals of people may be conflicting in nature and prove destructive for others. For example -

- Construction of dam could be a development goal for the industrialist but it is a conflicting goal as it would affect the lives of the people living in that area as the local people may get displaced and their livelihood may get disrupted.
- If there is slum near the high rise buildings then the people of that high rise building will have the developmental goal to remove the slum from that locality which will be a conflicting goal as it would displace the slum people.

12. Describe any three possible development goals of landless rural labourers. [CBSE 2016]

**Ans :**

The three possible development goals of landless rural labourers are:

- Have basic facilities and more days of work.
- Better wages.
- Quality education to their children in the nearby government school.

13. "Money cannot buy all the goods and services that one needs to live well". Do you agree with this statement? Justify your answer with any three suitable arguments.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

It is true to say that money in our pocket cannot buy all the goods and services that we need to live well because:

- Money cannot give us a pollution-free environment.
- It cannot ensure unadulterated medicines to the people.
- It cannot protect us from infectious diseases.

14. Differentiate between the Human Development Report and the World Development Report. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

The Human Development Report and the World Development Report can be differentiated on the following grounds:

- Human Development Report is published by the UNDP whereas the World Development Report is published by the World Bank.
- Human Development Report is published on the basis of PCI, health status and educational levels whereas the World Development Report classify the countries on the basis of just PCI.
- Human Development Report gives the real picture of development as it uses both the material and non-material criteria whereas the World Bank just uses the material criteria for the classification.

15. Why does Kerala have a better Human Development Index ranking in comparison to Punjab? Explain with three reasons. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Kerala has a better Human Development Index ranking in comparison to Punjab. The three reasons are:

- Kerala has better provisions of health facilities

and therefore the IMR in Kerala is very low.

- Kerala has better educational facilities. Therefore, literacy rate is high there and net attendance ratio is also high.
- Kerala has better provisions of PDS.

16. What is the main norm used by the World Bank in classifying different countries as rich and poor countries? What are the restrictions of such norms?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

The main norm used by the World Bank in classifying different countries as rich and poor countries is per capita income.

- Average income hides the disparity.
- Average income does not tell us the distribution of income among the people.
- It is just a material criteria for the comparison.

17. Besides income, what are the six other things people may look for growth and development?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Besides income, freedom, security, respect, equal treatment, friendship and pollution-free environment are the six other things people may look for growth and development.

18. State any three factors other than human income, which are important in life. [CBSE 2013]

**Ans :**

The three factors other than human income, which are important in life are:

- Freedom
- Respect
- Equal treatment.

19. Explain the importance of sustainable development with reference to ground water by giving example.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013]

Suitable development means development of the present generation by using the earth's resources as well as the ability to meet the needs of future generation also. For example, ground water is a renewable resources but we are overusing it as compare to its replenish time. Now people face water crisis due to its indiscriminate use.

20. Average income is important but it has limitations while using it. Explain. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Income is also an important criterion for comparing the countries because it helps in fulfilling the greater demands of the people. Higher income countries are more developed than the lower income countries. But it has limitation too.

- Average income hides the disparity.
- Average income does not tell us the distribution of income among the people.
- It is just a material criteria for the comparison.

21. Study the data given below and answer the questions that follow: [CBSE 2012]

**Some comparative data on Punjab,**

State	Infant mortality rate per 1,000 (2003]	Literacy rate (%) (2001]	Net attendance ratio for classes I -V (1995-96]
Punjab	49	70	81
Kerala	11	91	91
Bihar	60	47	41

- Which state has the highest infant mortality rate?
- Why does this state have the highest infant mortality rate? Give two reasons.

**Ans :**

- Bihar has the highest infant mortality rate.
- Due to the following two reasons, Bihar has the highest infant mortality rate:
  - Low income.
  - Poor medical facilities.

- What is Human Development Report? Which organisation measures HDR? Explain three major indicators of a country. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Human Development Report is about the level of development of different countries of the world.

UNDP is the organisation which makes Human Development Report.

The three major indicators used by the HDR are: PCI, health status and educational levels.

- Explain sustainable development. Suggest two measures to ensure sustainable development.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Development at present without harming the environment and also keep it safe for the future generation is termed as sustainable development.

- The two measures to ensure sustainable development are:
- Judicious use of resources.
- Stop degrading the natural resources.

- Compare India and Sri Lanka on the basis of any three indicators of Human Development Index for 2004.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

The following is the comparison between India and Sri Lanka on the basis of PCI, life expectancy and literacy rate used for the Human Development Index in the year 2004:

- In terms of PCI, India has US \$ 3139 whereas Sri Lanka has US \$ 4390.
- In terms of life expectancy, India has 64 whereas Sri Lanka has 74.
- In terms of literacy rate, India has 61% whereas Sri Lanka has 91%.

So it can be concluded that in all the parameters of development Sri Lanka is far ahead than India.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

- “Though the level of income is important, it is not an inadequate measure of development.” Justify the

statement.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2015]

It is true to say that the level of income is also an important criterion for comparing the countries because it helps in fulfilling the greater demands of the people. Higher income countries are more developed than the lower income countries.

- But just the level of income is not a useful criterion. Along with it the other non-material criteria should be used.
- UNDP's criteria is the best criteria for comparing the countries with respect to the other criteria because the other criteria like total income and per capita income are the material criteria whereas the UNDP uses both the material and non-material criteria for the comparison. It gives the real picture of development of a country.

- What is Human Development Index? Which organisation measures the HDI? Explain the three major indicators of the HDI.

**Ans :**

[CBSE 2015]

Human Development Index is about the level of development of different countries of the world which gives the ranking to different countries of the world.

UNDP is the organisation which measures Human Development Index.

The three major indicators used by the HDI are: PCI, health status and educational levels.

- “What may be the development for one may be the destruction for the other.” Explain the statement with appropriate examples. [CBSE 2014]

**Ans :**

It is true to say that what may be the development for one may be the destruction for the other. Sometimes the developmental goals of people may be conflicting in nature and prove destructive for others. For example,

- Construction of dam could be a development goal for the industrialist but it is a conflicting goal as it would affect the lives of the people living in that area as the local people may get displaced and their livelihood may get disrupted.
- If there is slum near the high rise buildings then the people of that high rise building will have the developmental goal to remove the slum from that locality which will be a conflicting goal as it would displace the slum people.

- What is sustainable development? Suggest any two ways in which resources can be used judiciously. [CBSE 2013]

**Ans :**

Development at present without harming the environment and also keeping for the is termed as sustainable

The two ways in which resources can be used judiciously are:

- Switching off the lights and fans when not in use.
- Turn off the engine at the red light.

- What is the main criteria used by the World Bank in classifying different countries? What are the limitations of this criteria, if any? In what respects



is the criteria used by the UNDP for measuring development different from the one used by the World Bank? [CBSE 2011]

**Ans :**

The main criterion used by the World Bank in classifying different countries is per capita income.

Limitations of using average income for comparison:

- a. Average income hides the disparity.
- b. Average income does not tell us the distribution of income among the people.
- c. It is just a material criteria for the comparison.

The criteria used by the UNDP for measuring development is different from the one used by the World Bank on the following basis:

- a. World Bank uses PCI as a criteria for comparing the countries whereas UNDP uses PCI, health status and educational levels for the comparison.
- b. The criteria used by the World Bank is just a material criteria whereas the criteria used by the UNDP is both material and non-material criteria.
- c. The criteria used by the World Bank does not give us a real picture of development as it is given by the UNDP.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

## Sector of Indian Economy

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. When we produce goods by exploiting the natural resources, in which category of economic sector such activities come? [CBSE 2018]

**Ans :**

When goods are produced by exploiting the natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector.

2. Who has the ownership of the assets in the public sector?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

The ownership of the assets in the public sector is with the government.

3. What does GDP stands for ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2016]

GDP stands for Gross Domestic Product.

4. Mention any one feature of the unorganised sector.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Unorganised sector is not registered with the government.

5. Where is the disguised employment found mostly?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

The disguised employment is mostly found in the agriculture sector.

6. In which sector are a large number of workers losing their jobs since 1990 ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

In the organised sector, a large number of workers losing their jobs since 1990.

7. What was the most important sector of economic activities at the earliest stages of development?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Primary sector was the most important sector of economic activities at the earliest stages of development.

8. Name the sector which forms the base for all other products. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Primary sector forms the base for all other products.

9. Name the sector in which the natural products are changed into other forms. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

Primary sector is the sector in which the natural products are changed into other forms.

10. Name the sector which helps in the development of

primary and secondary sectors.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Tertiary sector helps in the development of primary and secondary sectors.

11. Give four reasons for the rising of the tertiary sector in India.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

The four reasons for the rising of the tertiary sector in India are - provision of basic services, rise in income, development of primary and secondary sectors and development of ICT.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

12. Distinguish the service conditions of organised sector with that of unorganised sector. [CBSE 2018]

or

Explain with suitable examples which part of the service sector is not growing in importance.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

The service conditions of the organised and the unorganised sector are:

- a. Service conditions of Organised sector:

1. These are the big units.
2. These units are registered with the government.
3. There are some formal processes and procedures in this sector. Therefore, it is called organised.
4. There is security of employment.

- b. Service conditions of unorganised sector:

1. These are the small and scattered units,
2. These units are not registered with the government.
3. There are no formal processes and procedures in this sector. Therefore, it is called Unorganised.
4. There is no security of employment.

13. Name the sector that is the largest employer in India. Why does this sector produce only a quarter of the national GDP? [CBSE 2016]

or

Explain the meaning of disguised employment with the help of an example.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

Primary sector is the largest employer sector in India. This sector produce only a quarter of the national GDP because there is a problem of disguised unemployment in this sector. Though almost 60% people of India are engaged in this sector but all are not required there. Many of them are extra people. They are forced to be in this sector as there is less job opportunities in the other sectors.

14. What constitutes the unorganised sector in the urban areas? Why do workers in this area need protection?

**Ans :** [CBSE2015]

Workers in small scale industry, casual workers in construction, trade and transport constitutes the unorganised sector in the urban areas.

Workers in unorganised sector of the urban areas need protection because

- They are paid very low.
- Their work is erratic and so the income.

15. How does service sector help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2015]

Tertiary sector does not produce any good but it helps in the production of goods in the primary and the secondary sectors. For example:

- In the primary sector we need the service of transportation, cold storage, banking etc., which comes under the service sector.
- In the secondary sector, we need the help of transportation for bringing the raw materials and taking the final products to the market. Banking, trade, technology etc., are the other requirements.

16. With the example of sugarcane, explain the interdependence of all the three sectors of the economy. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

All the three sectors primary, secondary and tertiary are highly interdependent. They need the help of each other, without which none of the sectors would be able to complete its production or service.

For example: Cultivation of sugarcane comes under the primary sector. This cultivated sugarcane, is the raw material for sugar-making industries (comes under secondary sector). Sugarcane is transported to the sugar mills with the help of vehicles which comes under the tertiary sector. Sugar made by sugar mills are further transported to various markets and sold by retailers and wholesalers using tertiary sector.

17. Explain the working condition of the workers in unorganised sector. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

The working condition of the workers in unorganised sector:

- They do not follow the rules and regulations followed by the government.
- There are no formal processes and procedures in this sector. Therefore, it is called unorganised.
- There is no security of employment.
- There are no fixed working hours and workers are not paid for overtime.
- There are no benefits like paid holidays, medical facilities, safe working environment, provident fund etc.

18. Explain disguised unemployment with two examples, one from urban areas and other from rural areas.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

When more than the required people are working in a field, is called disguised unemployment. In several areas, all the members of a family work in the same agricultural land (which is small and does not require so much members).

In urban areas, people like plumber, carpenter, painter are not able to find work on a daily basis and hence do the odd job.

19. "Consequences of the environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries." Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Yes, it is true to say that the consequences of the environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries.

For example: If any country or state causes air pollution then it will affect not only to that state or country but to all throughout the world.

If there is water pollution caused by any state/ country then it will affect all states/ countries through which the river is flowing.

20. How did NREGA 2005 bring upliftment of the rural people? Explain.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act:

- This act was passed in the year 2005.
- According to this Act, 100 days of guaranteed employment is provided to all those who are able to work and are in need of work in the rural areas.
- Unemployment allowance is provided to the workers if the government is not able to provide them work within 15 days.
- This Act helps in providing income and livelihood to the people in the rural areas.

21. Explain the interdependence of all three sectors giving examples from transportation system.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Tertiary sector does not produce any good but it helps in the production of goods in the primary and the secondary sectors. For example:

- In the primary sector, we need the service of transportation for getting the supply of the agricultural inputs and also for selling the food grains in the market or supplying the agricultural raw materials to the agro- based industries.
- In the secondary sector, we need the help of transportation for bringing the raw materials and

taking the final products to the market.

- c. Transportation is required in the service sector as well such as for providing medical facilities to the people and other services like fire services etc.

**22.** Highlight the three factors responsible for the growth of service sector in the Indian economy.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2013]

Due to the following reasons, the tertiary sector is rising in importance in India:

- Rise in the basic services provided by the government.
- The development in the primary and secondary sectors has led to the development of the tertiary sector.
- Due to the rise in income, people have started spending on the various kinds of services.

**23.** Why has the entire tertiary sector not grown in importance? Explain. [CBSE 2012]

**Ans :**

The service sector includes two different kinds of people. One who is highly educated, skilled and earning very high such as doctors, engineers, software professionals etc., and on the other hand those who are not educated and unskilled such as street vendors, repair persons etc. Though the service sector has grown over the past few decades but not all of the service sector has grown equally. The educated and highly skilled workers have grown very high whereas the uneducated and the unskilled are still struggling.

**24.** Why does disguised employment not help in the productivity of the country? Explain with the help of an example.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2012]

In the disguised unemployment, extra people are working on the fields. They are not required for work. All seems working. No one sits idle. They share the labour effort. They work less than their potential. There is hidden unemployment. Underemployment is not just a feature of the primary sector. It can also be seen in the service sector such as people doing odd jobs like painters, plumbers etc.

The extra people working in these sectors does not help in increasing the production. Their presence or absence will not affect the total production.

For example: if a piece of land require only 8 people for completing the production but 10 people are engaged. The two people working are extra as they do not have any job opportunities outside. The land has a limit to produce. Engaging more people will not help in increasing the production from the land.

**25.** Explain the objectives of implementing the NREGA 2005.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act:

- This Act was passed in the year 2005.
- According to this Act, 100 days of guaranteed employment is provided to all those who are able to work and are in need of work in the rural areas.
- Unemployment allowance is provided to the

workers if the government is not able to provide them work within 15 days.

- d. This Act helps in providing income and livelihood to the people in the rural areas.

**26.** What is unorganised sector? Describe the working procedure of this sector.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2009]

Unorganised sector are the small and scattered units. These units are not registered with the government.

The working procedure of this sector are:

- They do not follow the rules and regulations followed by the government.
- There are no formal processes and procedures in this sector. Therefore, it is called Unorganised.
- There is no security of employment.
- There is no fixed working hours and workers are not paid for overtime.
- There are no benefits like paid holidays, medical facilities, safe working environment, provident fund etc.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

**27.** Give five reasons for the rising importance of the tertiary sector in production. [CBSE 2015]

**Ans :**

Five reasons for the rising importance of the tertiary sector in production are:

- Rise in the basic services provided by the government.
- The development in the primary and secondary sectors has led to the development of the tertiary sector.
- Due to the rise in income people have started spending on the various kinds of services.
- Due to the development of new kinds of services like IT sector services.
- Due to the introduction of the new economic policy liberalisation, privatisation and globalisation, the trade expanded all over the world and the role of service sector became significant.

**28.** Describe the provisions of National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act:

- This act was passed in the year 2005.
- According to this Act, 100 days of guaranteed employment is provided to all those who are able to work and are in need of work in the rural areas.
- Unemployment allowance is provided to the workers if the government is not able to provide them work within 15 days.
- This act helps in providing income and livelihood to the people in the rural areas.

**29.** What is GDP? Explain the process to calculate GDP.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

GDP can be defined as the total value of all the final goods and services produced by the three different



sectors in a country in a financial year.

GDP is a complex task. It is undertaken by the Central Government ministry after collecting all the data from the different states and the union territories.

30. Compare the employment conditions prevailing in the organised and unorganised sector?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2014]

The comparison between the employment conditions prevailing in the organised and unorganised sector is as follows :

	Organised Sector	Unorganised Sector
1.	These are the big units.	These are the small and scattered units.
2.	These units are registered with the government.	These units are not registered with the government.
3.	They follow the rules and regulations followed by the government.	They do not follow the rules and regulations followed by the government.
4.	There are some formal processes and procedures in this sector. Therefore, it is called organised.	There are no formal processes and procedures in this sector. Therefore, it is called Unorganised.
5.	There is security of employment.	There is no security of employment,
6.	There is fixed working hours and workers are paid for overtime.	There is no fixed working hours and workers are not paid for overtime.
7.	There are some other benefits like paid holidays, medical facilities, safe working environment, provident fund etc.	There are no benefits like paid holidays, medical facilities, safe working environment, provident fund etc.

31. In what ways can employment be increased in urban areas ?

**Ans :** [CBSE 2011]

Job opportunities can be increased in the urban areas through the following ways:

- Government should invest in transportation and storage.
- Government should provide loan to the people for starting their own business at reasonable rate of interest.
- Opportunities for new industries should be identified, located and promoted in the small towns.
- Opening of the services like the cold storages.
- Jobs can be created in the field of education, health and tourism sector.
- Jobs can be created by launching the various government schemes.

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

## Money and Credit

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Give any two examples of informal sector of credit.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2018]

The two examples of informal sector of credit are moneylenders and friends.

2. Highlight the inherent problem, in double coincidence of wants. [CBSE 2017]

**Ans :**

The inherent problem in double coincidence of wants is both the parties (seller and the buyer) have to agree to buy and sell each other's commodities.

3. How does the use of money make it easier to exchange things? Give an example. (All India 2017)

**Ans :**

In barter system, if a shoe manufacturer wants to sell shoes and buy wheat, first he has to look for a wheat-growing farmer who wants to buy shoes and needs to sell wheat.

Money can make it easier to exchange the things. The shoe manufacturer can sell the shoes for money and then with that money he can buy wheat.

4. How is money beneficial in transactions?

**Ans :** (Foreign 2017)

Money is beneficial in transactions as we can directly settle the transaction with use of it.

5. How do the deposits with the banks become their source of income? (Delhi 2016)

**Ans :**

With the deposits in the bank, the bank use it to extend loan to the borrowers with the high rate of interest. Bank pays less rate of interest to the depositors. The difference is the source of income of the banks.

6. Why can one not refuse a payment made in rupees in India? (Delhi 2016)

**Ans :**

One cannot refuse a payment made in rupees in India because it is authorized by the government of the country.

7. Compare formal sector loans with informal sector loans regarding interest only. (Delhi 2016)

**Ans :**

The rate of interest charged by the formal sector is low whereas it is high in case of the informal sector.

8. Why is the supervision of the functioning of the formal

sources of loans necessary?

(Ail India 2016)

**Ans :**

The supervision of the functioning of the formal sources of loans necessary to protect the borrowers from any kind of harassment as done in the informal sector.

9. Prove with an argument that there is a great need to expand formal sources of credit in rural India.

**Ans :**

(All India 2016)

There is a great need to expand formal sources of credit in rural India so that the people can be protected from the clutch ' of the moneylenders and improve their economic condition.

10. Why are most of the poor households deprived from the formal sector of loans? (All India 2016)

**Ans :**

As the banks are not available everywhere in the rural areas and also due to its documentation process, most of the poor households are deprived from the formal sector of loans.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

11. How does money eliminate the need for double coincidence of wants? (Foreign 2016)

**Ans :**

Money acts as an intermediate in the exchange process and thus eliminates the need for double coincidence of wants.

12. What is the meaning of barter system? (Delhi 2015)

**Ans :**

In the earlier times, before the introduction of money, goods and services were exchanged with goods and services. This system of exchange was termed as barter system.

13. What is meant by double coincidence of wants?

**Ans :**

(All India 2015)

An essential feature of barter system is double coincidence of wants in which, both the parties (seller

and the buyer) have to agree to buy and sell each other's commodities.

14. How does money act as a medium of exchange?

**Ans :** (All India 2015)

Money acts as an intermediate in the exchange process and eliminates the need for double coincidence of wants. As money acts as intermediate, it is also called medium of exchange.

15. What is a cheque? (Foreign 2015)

**Ans :**

A cheque is a paper that instructs the bank to pay a specific amount from the holder's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been issued.

16. Who supervises the functioning of the formal sources of loans? (Foreign 2015)

**Ans :**

The functioning of the formal sources of loans is supervised by the Reserve Bank of India.

17. What are the two forms of modern currency?

**Ans :** (Foreign 2015)

Paper notes and coins are the two forms of modern currency.

18. What is collateral? (Ail India 2010)

**Ans :**

It is an asset that the borrower owns and given to the lender as a guarantee that he will repay the loan. If the borrower is unable to repay the loan then the lender has the right to sell it and get the money back.

19. Define credit.

**Ans :** (All India 2010)

Credit is an agreement between the lender and the borrower in which the borrower promises to pay the lender in the future.

20. Which are the two major sources of formal loan for rural households. (All India 2010)

**Ans :**

The two major sources of formal loan for rural households are Banks and Cooperatives.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

21. Why is cheap and affordable credit important for the country's development? Explain any three reasons.

[CBSE 2018, Delhi 2012]

or

"Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's development." Assess the statement.

**Ans :** [Delhi 2016]

Due to the following three reasons, cheap and affordable credit is important for the country's development:

- It will help people to take credit for variety of reasons.
- It will help poor people to get rid of the problem of moneylenders and their high rate of interest.
- It will be easy for the people to repay the loan.

22. "Banks are efficient medium of exchange." Support

the statement with arguments. (CBSE 2017)

**Ans :**

Yes, it is true to say that Banks are efficient medium of exchange.

People have extra cash with them. Those having extra cash open a bank account in their name and deposit the surplus money there.

Out of the total money deposited with the banks 15% of it is kept as minimum cash balance to pay to the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day. Rest of the amount is used to extend loan to the borrowers.

23. Explain any three loan activities of banks in India.

**Ans :** (All India 2017)

The three loan activities of the banks are:

- People have extra cash with them. Those having extra cash open a bank account in their name and deposit the surplus money there.
- Out of the total money deposited with the banks, 15% of it is kept as minimum cash balance to pay to the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day.
- Rest of the amount is used to extend loan to the borrowers.

24. Illustrate with examples the role of loan in business.

**Ans :** [Foreign 2017]

The loan plays two different role in business:

- Credit plays a positive role when the borrower is able to return the loan amount on time and also made some profit with the use of that money. For example, Salim, a shoe manufacturer took a loan from different sources to complete the order of 3000 pair of shoes. In the end he delivered the order, made profit and repaid the loan.
- Sometimes credit is very painful as it pushes the borrower into such a situation from where recovery is very difficult. In this situation, the borrower is not able to repay the loan and many a times caught into the situation of debt-trap. For example, a small farmer Swapna took loan for crop cultivation but due to some reason she faced the situation of crop failure. So she took another loan for spraying pesticides but the production was not enough to repay the loan. So she was caught in debt-trap.

25. Describe the utility of Cheque.

**Ans :** [CBSE 2017]

A Cheque is a paper that instructs the bank to pay a specific amount from the account holder's account to the person in whose name the Cheque has been issued. Demand deposits are accepted as a means of payment because the depositors get the facility of Cheque against it, which is used to settle the transaction without the use of money.

26. How can money be easily exchanged for goods and services? Give an example to explain. (Delhi 2016)

**Ans :**

If a shoe manufacturer wants to sell shoes and buy wheat, then first he has to look for a wheat-growing

farmer who wants to buy shoes and needs to sell wheat.

Money can make it easier to exchange the things. The shoe manufacturer can sell the shoes for money and that money can be used to buy wheat.

27. "The credit activities of the informal sector should be discouraged." Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** (Delhi 2016)

It is true to say that the credit activities of the informal sector should be discouraged. It is due to the following reasons:

- They charge high rate of interest in comparison to that of formal sector.
- Thus the cost of borrowing is high.
- Due to high cost of borrowing, the borrowers have to repay more and they will have less saving, which will hinder individual economic development and ultimately will affect the country's economic development.

28. "Deposits with the banks are beneficial to the depositors as well as to the nation." Examine the statement.

**Ans :** (All India 2016)

Those having extra cash open a bank account in their name and deposit the surplus money there. Their money is safe with the banks and they get some interest rate on the amount they have deposited. Out of the total money deposited with the banks, 15% of it is kept as minimum cash balance to pay to the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day. Rest of the amount is used to extend loan to the borrowers.

This helps other people to run and expand their business which will increase the individual income and finally the country's income.

29. 'Credit has its own unique role for development.' Justify the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** (All India 2016)

Credit plays a positive role when the borrower is able to return the loan amount on time and also made some profit with the use of that money. For example, Salim, a shoe manufacturer took a loan from different sources to complete the order of 3000 pair of shoes. In the end he delivered the order, made profit and repaid the loan. Sometimes, credit is very painful as it pushes the borrower into such a situation from where recovery is very difficult. In this situation the borrower is not able to repay the loan and many a times caught into the situation of debt-trap. For example, a small farmer Swapna took loan for crop cultivation but due to some reason she faced the situation of crop failure. So she took another loan for spraying pesticides but the production was not enough to repay the loan. So she was caught in debt-trap.

30. How is money transferred from one bank account to another bank account? Explain with an example.

**Ans :** (Foreign 2016)

In modern times we have different options to transfer the money from one bank account to another such as through Cheque, draft, internet banking etc.

A Cheque is a paper that instructs the bank to pay a specific amount from the holder's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been issued.

In case of a Cheque, a person writes a Cheque in the name of the person in whose account the money is to be transferred. Then it is deposited by the person in his/ her bank. The bank transfers the amount to the person on whose name the cheque is drawn.

31. "Poor households still depend on informal source of credit." Support the statement with examples.

(Foreign 2016)

or

"Most of the poor household still depend on the informal sector for loans, both in rural and urban areas of India." Support the statement with three examples.

**Ans :** (Foreign 2012)

Yes, it is true that the poor households still depend on informal source of credit. It is due to the following reasons:

- Banks are not present everywhere.
- Collateral is required by the formal sector loan providers.
- Many a time, the moneylenders know the borrowers personally and willing to pay the loan without any collateral.

32. Why is it necessary for the banks and the cooperative societies to increase their lending facilities in the rural areas? Explain.

(Delhi 2015)

or

Why is there a great need to expand formal sector of credit in India? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :** (Foreign 2012)

Due to the following reasons it is necessary for the banks and the cooperative societies to increase their lending facilities in the rural areas:

- There is limited availability of the formal sector credit sources in the rural areas.
- The poor borrowers are bound to take loan from the moneylenders at high rate of interest.
- Due to high rate of interest they are not able to repay the loan and caught in debt-trap.

33. Why is modern currency accepted as a medium of exchange without any use of its own? Find out the reason.

**Ans :** (All India 2015)

Modern currency accepted as a medium of exchange without any use of its own due to the following reasons:

- In the modern times, currency notes and coins are used as a medium of exchange.
- These are not made of any precious metals even though used as a medium of exchange because the government of the country authorizes the currency.
- As the law legalizes the use of rupee, so no individual can refuse a payment made in rupees. Therefore, rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange.

34. "Money has made transactions easy." Justify.

(Foreign 2015)

or



How is money used as a medium of exchange? Explain with examples. (Delhi 2013)

or

How does money solve the problem of double coincidence of wants? Explain with an example.

**Ans :** (Delhi 2014)

In barter system, if a shoe manufacturer wants to sell shoes and buy wheat, first he has to look for a wheat-growing farmer who wants to buy shoes and needs to sell wheat.

Money can make it easier to exchange the things. The shoe manufacturer can sell the shoes for money and then that money can be used to buy wheat.

**35.** How is money used in everyday life? Explain with examples. (Delhi 2014)

**Ans :**

Use of money in our daily life:

- Money has become an essential part of life.
- For any kind of exchange of goods and services, we need money.
- In earlier times, when money was not in use, grains and cattle were used which was quite difficult as we had to face the problem of double coincidence of wants. But now for every transaction we are using money.

**36.** Explain with examples, how people are involved with the banks. (Delhi 2014)

**Ans :**

Three different people are involved in this process- depositors, bank and the borrowers.

Those having extra cash open a bank account in their name and deposit the surplus money there. Their money is safe with the banks and they get some interest rate on the amount they have deposited. Those who open an account and deposit money in it are called depositors.

Out of the total money deposited with the banks 15% of it is kept as minimum cash balance to pay to the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day. Rest of the amount is used to extend loan to the borrowers.

This is how the banks mediate between the depositors and the borrowers i.e. those having surplus and those who are in need of money.

**37.** Explain with an example, how credit plays a vital and positive role for development? (All India 2014)

**Ans :**

Credit plays a positive role when the borrower is able to return the loan amount on time and also made some profit with the use of that money. For example: Salim, a shoe manufacturer took a loan from different sources to complete the order of 3000 pair of shoes, in the end he delivered the order, made profit and repaid the loan.

**38.** Why do lenders ask for a collateral while lending? Give any three reasons. (Foreign 2014)

**Ans :**

The lenders ask for a collateral while lending due to

the following reasons:

- It is an asset that the borrower owns and given to the lender as a guarantee that he will repay the loan.
- If the borrower is unable to repay the loan then the lender has the right to sell it and get the money back.
- By this the borrower is bound to pay the loan within the defined time period.

**39.** What are the modern forms of money? Why is rupee widely accepted as a medium of exchange? Explain two reasons.

**Ans :** (Delhi 2013)

In the modern phase, currency notes- paper notes and coins are used as a medium of exchange.

These are not made of any precious metals even though used as a medium of exchange because the government of the country authorizes the currency.

As the law legalizes the use of rupee, so no individual can refuse a payment made in rupees. Therefore, rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange.

**40.** What is a collateral? Why do lenders ask for collateral while lending? Explain. (Delhi 2013)

**Ans :**

It is an asset that the borrower owns and given to the lender as a guarantee that he will repay the loan. If the borrower is unable to repay the loan then the lender has the right to sell it and get the money back. The lenders ask for a collateral while lending due to the following reasons:

- It is an asset that, the borrower owns and given to the lender as a guarantee that he will repay the loan.
- If the borrower is unable to repay the loan then the lender has the right to sell it and get the money back.
- By this the borrower is bound to pay the loan within the defined time period.

**41.** 'Cheap and affordable credit is essential for poor household both in rural and urban areas.' In the light of the above statement, explain the social and economic values attached to it. (All India 2013)

**Ans :**

Due to the following three reasons cheap and affordable credit is important for the country's development:

- It will help people to take credit for variety of reasons.
- It will help poor people to get rid of the problem of moneylenders and their high rate of interest.
- It will be easy for the people to repay the loan.

Social values: Due to cheap and affordable credit people will not be discriminated and ill-treated by the lenders.

Economic values: Due to the cheap and affordable credit the borrowers will easily repay the loan and there will be economic development,

**42.** Explain any four terms of credit with examples.

**Ans :** [All India 2011]

Terms of credit includes interest rate, collateral,

documents, mode of repayment etc.

Suppose a person taking a loan of 5 lakhs at 5% rate of interest from the bank. He has kept his house with the bank as a guarantee of repayment. He agreed to pay the monthly instalment.

43. Explain two points of differences between formal and informal sources of credit. (Foreign 2011)

**Ans :**

The two points of differences between formal and informal sources of credit are:

- Formal sector credit charge less rate of interest whereas informal sector credit charges very high rate of interest.
  - Formal sector credit is easy to repay whereas the informal sector credit is difficult to repay.
44. How does the use of money make the exchange of things easier? Explain with examples. (Delhi 2010)

**Ans :**

In barter system, if a shoe manufacturer wants to sell shoes and buy wheat, and then first he has to look for a wheat growing farmer who wants to buy shoes and needs to sell wheat.

Money can make it easier to exchange the things. The shoe manufacturer can sell the shoes for money and then that money can be used to buy wheat.

45. What are demand deposits? How is money safe in the banks? Explain. (Foreign 2013)

**Ans :**

Depositors are those who open an account and deposit money in the banks. Depositors can withdraw their money as and when they require therefore, these deposits are also called demand deposits.

Those having extra cash open a bank account in their name and deposit the surplus money there. Their money is safe with the banks and they get some interest rate on the amount they have deposited.

46. What is money? Why is modern money currency accepted as a medium of exchange? (Delhi 2012)

**Ans :**

Money is a medium of exchange used in settling the transactions.

- Money acts as an intermediate in the exchange process and eliminates the need for double coincidence of wants. As money acts as intermediate, it is also called medium of exchange.
  - People have exchanged their goods and services since from the beginning. The medium of exchange kept on changing in different phases.
  - In the modern phase currency notes- paper notes and coins are used as a medium of exchange.
  - These are not made of any precious metals even though used as a medium of exchange because the government of the country authorizes the currency.
  - As the law legalizes the use of rupee, so no individual can refuse a payment made in rupees. Therefore, rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange.
47. "Whether credit will be useful or not, depends upon

the situation." Give two different examples in support of this statement. (Foreign 2012)

**Ans :**

It is true to say that the usefulness of credit depends on the situations.

Positive role of credit: credit plays a positive role when the borrower is able to return the loan amount on time and also made some profit with the use of that money. For example: Salim, a shoe manufacturer took a loan from different sources to complete the order of 3000 pair of shoes, in the end he delivered the order, made profit and repaid the loan. Negative role of credit: sometimes credit is very painful as it pushes the borrower into such a situation from where recovery is very difficult. In this situation the borrower is not able to repay the loan and many a times caught into the situation of debt-trap. For example:-a small farmer Swapna took loan for crop cultivation but due to some reason she faced the situation of crop failure. So she took another loan for spraying pesticides but the production was not enough to repay the loan. So she was caught in debt-trap.

48. How do self-help groups help borrowers to overcome the problem of lack of collateral? Explain with an example.

**Ans :**

(Foreign 2012)

This is a new idea to organize rural poor particularly women who pool their savings. Generally, this group has 15-20 members. Members belong to the neighbourhood so that they can meet and save regularly. Saving per member varies from ₹ 25 to ₹ 100 or more, depending on the economic condition of the member.

When the group is regular in saving for a year or two then the group is eligible for getting loan from the bank. Bank provide loan in the name of the group and then the SHG gives loan to its members at very low rate of interest.

Loan matter is taken very seriously, as if any one member is not able to repay the loan then it is followed by other members and because of this feature, they get loan from the bank even though they have no collateral.

49. Mention any three points of distinction between formal sector loans and informal sector loans.

**Ans :**

(All India 2010)

The three points of distinction between formal sector loans and informal sector loans are:

- Banks and cooperatives are called the formal sector credit whereas moneylenders, friends etc. are called the informal sector credit.
- Formal sector credit charge less rate of interest whereas informal sector credit charges very high rate of interest.
- Formal sector credit is easy to repay whereas the informal sector credit is difficult to repay.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

50. What are self-help groups? How are they emerging as

an important source of credit? Explain. (Foreign 2013)  
or

‘Self-Help Groups’ help borrowers to overcome the problems of lack of collateral.” Examine the statement.

**Ans :** (Delhi 2017)

This is a new idea to organize rural poor particularly women who pool their savings. Generally, this group has 15-20 members. Members belong to the neighbourhood so that they can meet and save regularly. Saving per member varies from ₹ 25 to ₹ 100 or more, depending on the economic condition of the member.

When the group is regular in saving for a year or two then the group is eligible for getting loan from the bank. Bank provide loan in the name of the group and then the SHG gives loan to its members at very low rate of interest.

Loan matter is taken very seriously as, if any one member is not able to repay the loan then it is followed by other members and because of this feature, they get loan from the bank even though they have no collateral.

51. Review any three merits and any two demerits of ‘formal sector of credit’ in India. (Foreign 2017)

**Ans :**

Merits of formal sector credit in India:

- It provides cheap and affordable credit.
- Due to low cost of borrowing, the borrowers have to repay less and they will have more saving.
- The loan activities of the formal sector is supervised by the RBI.

Demerits of formal sector credit in India:

- Mostly people in the urban areas and the well-off households use it.
- Formal sector credit need proper documents and collateral before lending.

52. “Banks are playing an important role in the development of the Indian economy.” Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Cheap and affordable credit is important for the country’s development because:

- It will help people to take credit for variety of reasons.
- It will help poor people to get rid of the problem of moneylenders and their high rate of interest.
- It will be easy for the people to repay the loan.

Those having extra cash open a bank account in their name and deposit the surplus money there. Their money is safe with the banks and they get some interest rate on the amount they have deposited. Out of the total money deposited with the banks, 15% of it is kept as minimum cash balance to pay to the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day. Rest of the amount is used to extend loan to the borrowers.

This helps people to run and expand their business which will increase the individual income and finally the country’s income. Credit plays a positive role when the borrower is able to return the loan amount on time and also made some profit with the use of

that money. For example: Salim, a shoe manufacturer took a loan from different sources to complete the order of 3000 pair of shoes, in the end he delivered the order, made profit and repaid the loan.

53. Describe the vital and positive role of credit with examples. (Delhi 2016)

or

How does credit plays a vital and positive role? Explain with suitable example.

**Ans :** (Foreign 2010)

Credit : Credit is an agreement between the lender and the borrower in which the borrower promises to pay the lender in the future.

Positive role of credit: Credit plays a positive role when the borrower is able to return the loan amount on time and also made some profit with the use of that money. For example: Salim, a shoe manufacturer took a loan from different sources to complete the order of 3000 pair of shoes, in the end he delivered the order, made profit and repaid the loan.

54. How can the formal sector loans be made beneficial for the poor farmers and workers? Suggest any five measures.

**Ans :** (All India 2016)

The formal sector loans can be made beneficial for the poor farmers and the workers by taking the following measures:

- There should be availability of more and more banks in the rural areas.
- Providing the loan to the poor at much cheaper rates.
- There should be easy access to loan.
- Depending on situation, farmers should be given credit without collateral.
- There should be provision of instant loan to the farmers and the poor.

55. How are deposits with banks beneficial for the individual as well as for the nation? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (Delhi 2015)

Those having extra cash open a bank account in their name and deposit the surplus money there. Their money is safe with the banks and they get some interest rate on the amount they have deposited. Out of the total money deposited with the banks 15% of it is kept as minimum cash balance to pay to the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day. Rest of the amount is used to extend loan to the borrowers.

This helps people to run and expand their business which will increase the individual income and finally the country’s income.

56. What are Self-Help Groups? How do they work? Explain.

**Ans :** (Delhi 2015)

This is a new idea to organize rural poor particularly women who pool their savings. Generally, this group has 15-20 members. Members belong to the neighbourhood so that they can meet and save regularly. Saving per member varies from ₹ 25 to ₹

100 or more, depending on the economic condition of the member.

When the group is regular in saving for a year or two then the group is eligible for getting loan from the bank. Bank provide loan in the name of the group and then the SHG gives loan to its members at very low rate of interest.

Loan matter is taken very seriously, as if any one member is not able to repay the loan then it is followed by other members and because of this feature, they get loan from the bank even though they have no collateral.

Loan is provided to help them to create self-employment opportunities. All the group members together take decision regarding saving and loan activities. SHG helps women in making them financially self-reliant and provides platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues.

57. How do banks play an important role in the economy of India? Explain.

**Ans :** (All India 2015)

People take credit from different sources, which can be grouped into two- formal sector loans and informal sector loans. Formal sector credit sources includes banks and cooperatives.

They charge less rate of interest in comparison to that of informal sector. Thus the cost of borrowing is less. Due to low cost of borrowing, the borrowers have to repay less and they will have more saving, which will cause individual economic development and ultimately will lead to the country's economic development. Therefore, it can be said that formal sources of credit provides us cheap and affordable credit, which is important for country's development.

Thus it is important that banks and cooperatives should increase their lending especially in the rural areas so that people will be less dependent on the informal sector.

58. What is credit? How does credit play a vital and positive role? Explain with an example.

**Ans :** (Foreign 2015)

Credit is an agreement between the lender and the borrower in which the borrower promises to pay the lender in the future. Credit plays a positive role when the borrower is able to return the loan amount on time and also made some profit with the use of that money.

For example: Salim, a shoe manufacturer took a loan from different sources to complete the order of 3000 pair of shoes, in the end he delivered the order, made profit and repaid the loan.

59. Why is it necessary for the banks and the cooperative societies to extend their lending activities in the rural areas? Explain. (Foreign 2014)

**Ans :**

Due to the following reasons it is necessary for the banks and the cooperative societies to extend their lending activities in the rural areas:

- There is limited availability of the formal sector credit sources in the rural areas.

- The poor borrowers are bound to take loan from the moneylenders at high rate of interest
- Due to high rate of interest they are not able to repay the loan and caught in debt- trap.
- Formal sector credit is required in the rural areas to expand the farming and small scale business activities.
- It is important for the individual development of the people in the rural areas.

60. What are the two categories of sources of credit? Mention four features of each.

**Ans :** (All India 2013)

The two categories of sources of credit are formal sector credit and informal sector credit.

Four features of formal sector credit are:

- Formal sector credit sources includes banks and cooperatives.
- Mostly people in the urban areas and the well-off households use it.
- Formal sector credit need proper documents and collateral before lending.
- They charge less rate of interest in comparison to that of informal sector. Thus the cost of borrowing is less.

Four features of informal sector credit are:

- Informal sector credit sources includes moneylenders, friends, relatives, traders etc.
- Mostly people in the rural areas and the poor households use it. Many a times informal sector don't ask for documents and collateral as they know the borrowers personally.
- They charge high rate of interest in comparison to that of formal sector. Thus the cost of borrowing is high.
- Due to high cost of borrowing, the borrowers have to repay more and they will have less saving, which will hinder individual economic development.

61. Which government body supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans in India? Explain its functions.

**Ans :** (All India 2012)

RBI is the government body which supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans in India.

Functions of RBI:

- RBI sees that the banks maintain the minimum cash balance or not.
- RBI monitors that the loan is not just given to the profit-making businesses and traders but also to the small borrower.
- RBI asks the banks to submit information like how much they are lending, to whom they are lending and at what rate of interest etc.

62. Describe any four advantages of Self-Help Groups for the poor. (Delhi 2011)

**Ans :**

This is a new idea to organize rural poor particularly women who pool their savings. Generally, this group has 15-20 members. Members belong to the neighbourhood so that they can meet and save regularly. Saving per member varies from ? 25 to ? 100 or more, depending on the economic condition of the member.



The four advantages of Self-Help Groups for the poor are:

- When the group is regular in saving for a year or two then the group is eligible for getting loan from the bank.
- Bank provide loan in the name of the group and then the SHG gives loan to its members at very low rate of interest.
- Loan matter is taken very seriously, as if any one member is not able to repay the loan then it is followed by other members and because of this feature, they get loan from the bank even though they have no collateral.
- Loan is provided to help them to create self-employment opportunities. SHG helps women in making them financially selfreliant and provides platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues.

63. Why the deposits in the banks are called demand deposits? What are the benefits of deposits with the banks?

**Ans :**

**(Foreign 2010)**

Depositors are those who open an account and deposit money in the banks. Depositors can withdraw their money as and when they require therefore, these deposits are also called demand deposits. Demand deposits are accepted as a means of payment because the depositors get the facility of Cheque against it, which is used to settle the transaction without the use of money.

The benefits of deposits with the banks are:

- People have extra cash with them. Those having extra cash open a bank account in their name and deposit the surplus money there.
- Their money is safe with the banks.
- They get some interest on the amount they have deposited.

64. When does credit push the borrower into a debt-trap? Explain with the help of an example.

**Ans :**

**(Foreign 2010)**

Sometimes credit is very painful as it pushes the borrower into such a situation from where recovery is very difficult. In this situation the borrower is not able to repay the loan and many a times, caught into the situation of debt-trap. For example:-a small farmer Swapna took loan for crop cultivation but due to some reason she faced the situation of crop failure. So she took another loan for spraying pesticides but the production was not enough to repay the loan. So she was caught in debt-trap.

#### **NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

## Globalization and Indian Economy

### ONE MARK QUESTIONS

1. Differentiate between investment and foreign investment.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2016)

Investment can be defined as money spent for buying the inputs for the production like land, buildings, machines etc. whereas foreign investment is the investment done by a investor from abroad or MNC is termed as foreign investment.

2. Why do MNCs setup their offices and factories in those regions where they get cheap labour and other resources?

**Ans :** (CBSE 2016)

MNCs setup their offices and factories in those regions where they get cheap labour and other resources so that they can reduce their cost of production and maximize the profit.

3. Due to what reason are the latest models of different items available within our reach? (CBSE 2016)

**Ans :**

It is due the policy of liberalisation, privatization and globalisation the latest models of different goods are available within our reach.

4. Why had the Indian government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence? State any one reason. (CBSE 2015)

**Ans :**

The Indian government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence in order to protect the industries in India from the foreign competition as they were in the infancy stage.

5. What is the meaning of investment? (CBSE 2015)  
or

Define the term investment.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2010)

Investment can be defined as money spent for buying the inputs for the production like land, buildings, machines etc.

6. What is meant by trade barrier? (CBSE 2015)

**Ans :**

Restrictions set by the government to increase or decrease (regulate) the foreign trade is what called trade barrier.

7. Why did the Indian government remove barriers to a large extent on foreign trade and foreign investment?

**Ans :** (CBSE 2015)

The Indian government removed barriers to a large

extent on foreign trade and foreign investment so that the Indian companies could compete in the international market.

8. What is a Multinational Corporation?

**Ans :** (CBSE 2010)

MNC : Multinational Corporations is a company owning and or controlling production in more than one nation.

9. Give the meaning of globalisation. (CBSE 2010)

**Ans :**

It can be defined as process of rapid interconnection or integration between the international market.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

1. Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
2. Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
3. 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
4. NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

### THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

10. Examine any three conditions which should be taken care of by Multinational Companies to set up their production units.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2017)

The three conditions which should be taken care of by Multinational Companies to set up their production units are:

- a. Labour: There should be easy availability of cheap and skilled labour for the industries. This will help in reducing in the cost of production and maximizing the profit.
- b. Market: The markets should be close to the production units so that there should be less expenditure on the transport cost.
- c. Government policies: The government policies of that particular countries should be in favour of the company such as flexibility in labour laws etc.

11. How do Multi-National Corporations (MNCs) interlink production across countries? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (All India 2017)

Interlinking of production is one of the important feature of the MNCs.

For example: An MNC from USA producing the

industrial equipment is designing its product in the research centres of the US, its components are manufactured in China, the assembling and the export work is done from Mexico and Eastern Europe and its call centres are there in India.

12. How is foreign trade interlinking markets of different countries? Explain with example. (Foreign 2017)

**Ans :**

Foreign trade means trade with other countries. When we trade with other countries then we connect with the markets of different countries.

For example, Chinese toys in the Indian market. In this process, the goods and services are produced and sold at global level. There is movement of technology and people between the countries. It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market. Buyers get different choice, price and quality.

13. What measures can be taken by the government of India to make globalisation fairer? Explain.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2017)

The various measures that can be taken by the government of India to make globalisation fairer are:

- Labour laws should be implemented properly and the workers get equal rights.
- Government should use trade barriers if required.
- Government should negotiate at the WTO for fairer rules.

14. 'Barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent in India since 1991.' Justify the statement. (CBSE 2016)

or

Why have the barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment been removed to a large extent by the Indian government? Explain.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2014)

Barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent in India since 1991. Indian government decided to remove trade barriers due to the following reasons:

- The Indian government wanted the domestic producers to face the global competition.
- By this competition, the Indian producers will also get a chance to improve their quality.
- Removal of trade barriers will allow the producers of different countries to trade with India.

15. How have our markets been transformed? Explain with examples. (CBSE 2016, 2014)

or

In recent years how our markets have been transformed? Explain with examples. (CBSE 2015)

or

"A wide ranging choice of goods are available in the Indian markets." Support the statement with examples in context of globalisation.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2016)

It is true to say that now there is wide ranging choice of goods are available in the Indian markets. It is possible due to the policy of liberalisation, privatization and globalisation followed by India since 1991. Before 1990, we had limited brands and limited variety of products in the market but now the market

is flooded with variety of brands. For example, earlier we had just Ambassador and Fiat cars on the Indian roads but now we have so many brands from all over the world. The same happened in the field of TV, mobile phones, garments etc.

16. "Globalisation and greater competition among producers has been advantageous to consumers." Justify the statement with examples. (CBSE 2016)

**Ans :**

It is true to state that Globalisation and greater competition among producers has been of advantageous to consumers. The consumers are getting advantage in the following ways:

- They get different brands of the product.
- They get the goods and services at cheaper rate.

17. Why had the Indian government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence? Analyse the reasons.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2016, 2014)

Indian government put trade barriers after the independence on foreign trade and foreign investments to protect the domestic producers from the foreign competition. At that time in 1950s and 1960s Indian industries were just coming up, so were not in a position to compete with the foreign producers.

18. What is foreign trade? How does it integrate markets? Explain with examples. (CBSE 2013)

or

How does foreign trade integrate the markets of different countries? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2016)

Foreign trade means trade with other countries. When we trade with other countries then we connect with the markets of different countries.

For example, Chinese toys in the Indian market. In this process the goods and services are produced and sold at global level. There is movement of technology and people between the countries. It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market. Buyers get different choice, price and quality.

An MNC from USA producing the industrial equipment is designing its product in the research centres of the US, its components are manufactured in China, the assembling and the export work is done from Mexico and Eastern Europe and its call centres are there in India.

19. How do large companies manipulate the market? Explain with examples. (CBSE 2016)

**Ans :**

It is very true to say that the large companies often manipulate the markets. They do this by influencing the price of the products, labour and the market conditions. They are able to do this because they have huge wealth, low cost of production, and better technology.

For example, Chinese products in the Indian markets. Due to the low prices of the Chinese products in the Indian market they are able to expand their market in India. They have good number of buyers as

they sell the products at cheap rate.

20. "Technology has stimulated the globalisation process." Support the statement with examples. (CBSE 2015)

or

"Information and Communication Technology has played a major role in spreading our production of services across countries". Justify the statement with examples. (CBSE 2016)

or

How has Information and Technology stimulated globalisation process? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2014)

It is true to say that the Information and Communication Technology has played a major role in spreading our production of services across countries. Development in technology is one of the most important factors that has enabled the process of globalization. It can be studied under two different headings:

- Developments in transport technology: The world has done tremendous improvements in the field of transportation technology. Now we have different fastest means of transport with the help of which we can reach to different parts of the world in less time and can control trade and integrate the markets easily.
- Developments in ICT (Information and Communication Technology): It includes telephones, mobile phones, computers, internet, fax, e-mails etc. A remarkable development can be seen in the field of ICT throughout the world. Now the world is just a click away. With the help of ICT we can share and obtain information instantly across the globe at negligible cost.

21. "Foreign trade integrates the markets in different countries." Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2015)

Foreign trade integrates the markets in different countries through the following ways:

- Goods and services are produced at global level.
  - Goods and services are sold at global level.
  - Investments, technology and people are moving between countries.
  - Production process is complex but organized.
  - It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market.
  - Buyers get different choice, price and quality.
  - MNCs by the foreign trade connects/ integrates the markets in the world. For example: Chinese toys in India.
22. How did Cargill Foods became the largest producer of the edible oils in India? Explain. (CBSE 2014)
- Ans :**
- Cargill Foods, an American MNC has bought Indian company named Parakh Food. Now the control on the large marketing network and the four oil refineries has shifted to the Cargill Food. Cargill Food has now become the largest producer of edible oil in India.
23. Why did Ford Motors want to develop Ford India as a component supplying base for its other plants across

the globe? Explain.

(CBSE 2014)

or

How are local companies benefitted by collaborating with multinational companies? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2013)

Joining hand with local companies is also one of the way through which the MNCs spread production. Sometimes the MNCs join hands with the local companies and do the production. In this process, the local companies get twin benefits:

- They get foreign investment.
- MNCs provide newer technology to them for the production.

For example: In 1995 Ford Motors an American company joined hand with the Indian company called Mahindra and Mahindra (manufacturer of jeeps and trucks) due to the following reasons:

- Availability of cheap and skilled labour.
- Close to the markets.

24. How does foreign trade connect the markets of different countries? Explain with example.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2014)

Foreign trade integrates the markets in different countries through the following ways:

For example: Chinese toys in India. In this process the Goods and services are produced and sold at global level. There is movement of technology and people between the countries. It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market. Buyers get different choice, price and quality.

An MNC from USA producing the industrial equipment is designing its product in the research centres of the US, its Components are manufactured in china, the assembling and the export work is done from Mexico and Eastern Europe and its call centres are there in India.

25. "The impact of globalisation has not been visualized uniformly among producers and workers." Support the statement with facts. (CBSE 2014)

**Ans :**

The impact of globalization, has not been uniform among the producers and workers. The impact of globalization can be noticed on these people:

- Producers: there are two types of producers. Large producers and small producers. The big producers who join hands with the MNCs are getting the profit but the small producers face loss because they are not able to compete with the large producers
- Workers: MNCs affected the workers in both the ways. MNCs helped in giving employment to the workers and improved their economic conditions but at the same time MNCs due to flexibility in labour laws hire the workers on temporary basis and their job is not secured.
- The large producers manipulate the market. They influence the price, labour, working conditions etc. So in many cases they have to shut down their business.

26. How do Multinational Companies manage to keep the cost of production of their goods low? Explain with



examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2013)

Due to the following reasons the Multinational Companies manage to keep the cost of production of their goods low:

- They set up their production units where there is easy availability of cheap and skilled labour.
- They look for the locations from the markets are close so that they will have to pay less transportation cost in supplying the final goods to the consumers.
- They set up their business in the countries where the government policies are favourable for them. Such as in India the Indian government has given them the benefit of flexibility in labour laws.

27. What is globalisation? How does globalisation help in interconnection among different countries? Explain with examples. (CBSE 2013)

**Ans :**

It can be defined as the process of rapid interconnection or integration between the markets. The following are the different ways through which globalisation helps in inter-connection among different countries:

- By producing goods and services which are produced at global level.
- Goods and services are sold at global level.
- Investments, technology and people are moving between countries.
- It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market.
- MNCs by the foreign trade connects/ integrates the markets in the world.

28. How are MNCs spreading their production across countries? Explain with an example. (CBSE 2012)

**Ans :**

An MNC from USA producing the industrial equipment is designing its product in the research centres of the US, its components are manufactured in China, the assembling and the export work is done from Mexico and Eastern Europe and its call centres are there in India.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS**

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.

29. What would happen if government of India puts heavy tax on import of Chinese toys? Explain any three points.

(CBSE 2012)

**Ans :**

The following are the three possible effects if government of India puts heavy tax on import of Chinese toys:

- The price of the Chinese toys in the Indian market will rise.
- Due to the high price there will be less number of buyers.
- The Chinese toys market in India will shrink and the Indian toy makers will expand their market.

30. How has foreign trade been integrating markets for different countries in the world? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

(CBSE 2012)

Foreign trade means trade with other countries. When we trade with other countries then we connect with the markets of different countries.

For example, Chinese toys in the Indian market. In this process the goods and services are produced and sold at global level. There is movement of technology and people between the countries. It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market. Buyers get different choice, price and quality.

An MNC from USA producing the industrial equipment is designing its product in the research centres of the US, its components are manufactured in China, the assembling and the export work is done from Mexico and Eastern Europe and its call centres are there in India.

**Ans :**

31. What is the main aim of the world trade organisation? Explain its functions. (CBSE 2012)

**Ans :**

The main aim of WTO is to liberalise international trade.

The various functions of the World Trade Organisation are:

- It makes rules regarding international trade and checks that these rules are followed.
- WTO says that there should be no trade barriers i.e. members of WTO should liberalise their trade policies and trade between countries should be free.
- But in practice it can be seen that developing countries follow these rules whereas the developed countries have not liberalized their trade policies.

32. How has globalisation been advantageous to both the producers as well as the consumers in India? Explain.

**Ans :**

(CBSE 2012)

This is true to state that Globalisation has been advantageous to both the producers as well as the consumers in India. Producers: there are two types of producers. Large producers and small producers. The big producers who join hands with the MNCs are getting the profit but the small producers face loss because they are not able to compete with the large producers. The large producers manipulate the market. They influence the price, labour, working conditions etc. So in many cases they have to shut down their business.

Consumers:

- They get different brands of the product.
- They get the goods and services at cheaper rate.
- They get better quality products.

- 33.** Explain any three conditions that determine MNCs setting up production in other countries.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2011)

The three conditions that determine MNCs setting up production in other countries are:

- They set up their production units where there is easy availability of cheap and skilled labour.
- They look for the locations from the markets are close so that they will have to pay less transportation cost in supplying the final goods to the consumers.
- They set up their business in the countries where the government policies are favourable for them. Such as in India the

Indian government has given them the benefit of flexibility in labour laws.

- 34.** “Globalisation and greater competition among producers has been advantageous to consumers.” Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2015)

Yes, it is true to say that the Globalisation and greater competition among producers has been advantageous to consumers because:

Consumers:

- They get different brands of the product.
- They get the goods and services at cheaper rate.
- They get better quality products.

- 35.** Explain any four ways in which globalisation and pressure of competition has changed the lives of workers substantially.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2012)

The four ways in which globalisation and pressure of competition has changed the lives of workers substantially are:

- MNCs helped in reducing the unemployment in India.
- It provided job opportunities to the people.
- It helped in improving the standard of living of the workers.
- It has given opportunity to the workers to move out from the primary sector and helped in their economic growth.

- 36.** “Information and communication technology has played a major role in spreading out products and services across countries.” Support the statement.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2012)

It is true to say that Information and communication technology has played a major role in spreading out products and services across countries.

Developments in ICT (Information and Communication Technology): It includes telephones, mobile phones, computers, internet, fax, e-mails etc. a remarkable development can be seen in the field of ICT throughout the world. Now the world is just a click away. With the help of ICT we can share and obtain information instantly across the globe at negligible cost.

- 37.** Explain the role of government in making globalisation fair. (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

The government can play the following roles to make the globalisation fairer:

- Government policies should protect both rich and the poor.
- Labour laws should be implemented properly and the workers get equal rights.
- Government should support the small producers so that they can improve their performance and compete.
- Government should use trade barriers if required.
- Government should negotiate at the WTO for fairer rules.
- All the developing countries government should group together to fight against the developed countries at WTO.
- Governments can campaign and protest regarding the unfair rules.

- 38.** What is globalisation? Describe the role of MNCs in promoting globalisation process.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2016)

Globalisation can be defined as the process of rapid interconnection or integration between the markets. MNCs play a vital role in promoting globalisation process as: By producing Goods and services at global level.

- Goods and services and sold at global level. Investments, technology and people are moving between countries.
- It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market.
- MNCs by the foreign trade connects/ integrates the markets in the world.

- 39.** What is the meaning of SEZ? Mention any two features of SEZ. (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

SEZ means special economic zone. The two features of SEZ are:

- Governments are creating SEZs where they provide world class facilities for electricity, roads, water, transport, recreational and educational facilities to the MNCs.
- MNCs will not have to pay taxes for the initial period of five years if they set up their production units in the SEZs.

- 40.** How do large companies often manipulate the markets? Explain with an example. (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

It is very true to say that the large companies often manipulate the markets. They do this by influencing the price of the products, labour and the market conditions. They are able to do this because they have huge wealth, low cost of production, and better technology.

For example, Chinese products in the Indian markets. Due to the low prices of the Chinese products in the Indian market they are able to expand their market in India. They have good number of buyers as they sell the products at cheap rate.

- 41.** Give the meaning of WTO. Mention any two

shortcomings of WTO. (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

WTO means World Trade Organisation. The two shortcomings of the WTO are:

- WTO is not able to check the rules made for the free and fair international trade.
- In practice it can be seen that developing countries follow these rules whereas the developed countries have not liberalized their trade policies.

**42.** Explain any three advantages of globalisation.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2011)

The three advantages of globalisation are:

- The producers are getting an opportunity to reach beyond the domestic market.
- The workers are getting more job opportunities.
- The consumers are getting variety of brands with quality and cheaper prices.

**43.** What is a trade barrier? Why did the Indian government put trade barriers after independence? Explain. (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

Restrictions set by the government to increase or decrease (regulate) the foreign trade is what called trade barrier.

Due to the following reasons the Indian government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence:

- The Indian government wanted the domestic producers to face the global competition.
- By this competition the Indian producers will also get a chance to improve their quality.
- Removal of trade barriers will allow the producers of different countries to trade with India.

**44.** Explain with three examples how top Indian companies have benefitted from globalisation? (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

It is true to say that the top Indian companies have benefitted from globalisation. The three examples are:

- The top Indian companies are benefitted from the competition.
- The top Indian companies invested in the newer technologies and production methods and thus increased their production tremendously.
- Some of the top Indian companies like the Tata Motors and Infosys have spread their unit worldwide.

**45.** What are the harmful effects of MNCs to a host country? Give three examples. (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

The harmful effects of MNCs to a host country are:

- They have to provide a world class facility to these MNCs.
- They have to ensure flexibility in labour laws.
- The local small producers are hit hard and have to shut down due to the competition with the MNC.

**46.** What has been the impact of globalisation on India? Explain. (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

Globalisation has its deep impact on India. The impact of globalization has not been uniform in the Indian economy as different people are affected in a different way. The impact of globalization can be noticed, on these people:

- Producers: big producers who join hands with the MNCs are getting the profit but the small producers face loss and in many cases they have to shut down their business.
- Workers: MNCs helped in reducing the unemployment in India but as MNCs get flexibility in labour laws so they hire the workers on temporary basis.
- Buyers: MNCs produce mostly for the rich buyers so the rich buyers get choices in the market more than the poor buyers.

**47.** What are the benefits of the foreign trade to producers and consumers? (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

Globalisation has been advantageous to both the producers as well as the consumers in India.

Producers: there are two types of producers. Large producers and small producers. The big producers who join hands with the MNCs are getting the profit but the small producers face loss because they are not able to compete with the large producers. The large producers manipulate the market. They influence the price, labour, working conditions etc. So in many cases they have to shut down their business.

Consumers:

- They get different brands of the product.
- They get the goods and services at cheaper rate.
- They get better quality products.

**48.** Explain the role of information technology in globalisation. (CBSE 2011)

**Ans :**

The role of information technology in globalisation:

- Development in technology is one of the most important factor that has enabled the process of globalization.
- Developments in ICT (information and communication technology) includes telephones, mobile phones, computers, internet, fax, e-mails etc. a remarkable development can be seen in the field of ICT throughout the world.
- Now the world is just a click away. With the help of ICT we can share and obtain information instantly across the globe at negligible cost.

**49.** How has transportation technology stimulated the globalisation process-? Explain with suitable examples.

**Ans :**

(CBSE 2011)

Development in technology is one of the most important factor that has enabled the process of globalization.

Developments in transport technology: the world has done tremendous improvements in the field of transportation technology. Now we have different fastest means of transport with the help of which we can reach to different parts of the world in less time and can control trade and integrate the markets easily.

50. Explain how globalisation can be made fairer.  
(CBSE 2010)

**Ans :**

The government can play the following roles to make the globalisation fairer:

- Government policies should protect both rich and the poor.
- Labour laws should be implemented properly and the workers get equal rights.
- Government should support the small producers so that they can improve their performance and compete.
- Government should use trade barriers if required.
- Government should negotiate the WTO for fairer rules.
- All the developing countries government should group together to fight against the developed countries at WTO.
- Governments can campaign and protest regarding the unfair rules.

## FIVE MARKS QUESTIONS

51. How has foreign trade been integrating markets of different countries? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2018)

Foreign trade means trade with other countries. When we trade with other countries then we connect with the markets of different countries.

For example, Chinese toys in the Indian market. In this process the goods and services are produced and sold at global level. There is movement of technology and people between the countries. It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market. Buyers get different choice, price and quality.

An MNC from USA producing the industrial equipment is designing its product in the research centres of the US, its components are manufactured in China, the assembling and the export work is done from Mexico and Eastern Europe and its call centres are there in India.

52. How do we feel the impact of globalization on our daily life? Explain with examples. (CBSE 2018)

**Ans :**

This is true to say that now there is wide ranging choice of goods available in the Indian markets. It is possible due to the policy of liberalisation, privatization and globalisation followed by India since 1991. Before 1990, we had limited brands and limited variety of products in the market but now the market is flooded with variety of brands. For example, earlier we had just Ambassador and Fiat cars on the Indian roads but now we have so many brands from all over the world. The same happened in the field of T.V, mobile phones, garments etc.

53. Describe the contribution of technology in promoting the process of globalization. (Delhi 2017)

or

How has improvement in technology stimulated the

globalisation process? Explain. (CBSE 2013)

or

Explain the role of technology in stimulating globalisation process.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2010)

It is true to say that the Information and Communication Technology has stimulated the globalisation process and played a major role in spreading our production of services across countries. Technological development: development in technology is one of the most important factor that has enabled the process of globalization. It can be studied under two different headings:

- Developments in transport technology: The world has done tremendous improvements in the field of transportation technology. Now we have different fastest means of transport with the help of which we can reach to different parts of the world in less time and can control trade and integrate the markets easily.
- Developments in ICT (Information and Communication Technology): It includes telephones, mobile phones, computers, internet, fax, e-mails etc. A remarkable development can be seen in the field of ICT throughout the world. Now the world is just a click away. With the help of ICT we can share and obtain information instantly across the globe at negligible cost.

54. Explain by giving examples how multinational corporations are spreading their products in different ways. (CBSE 2016, 2013)

or

How are multinational corporations spreading their products? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2014)

The following are the three ways in which multinational corporations are spreading their products in different ways:

- Buying up the local companies: This is most common route for MNC investment and expanding production. MNCs can do so because they have huge wealth. For example: Cargill Foods an American MNC has bought Indian company named Parakh Food. Now the control on the large marketing network and the four oil refineries has shifted to the Cargill Food. Cargill Food has now become the largest producer of edible oil in India.
- Joining hand with local companies: Sometimes the MNCs join hands with the local companies and do the production. In this process, the local companies get twin benefits: (i) they get foreign investment and (ii) MNCs provide newer technology to them for the production. For example: In 1995, Ford Motors an American company joined hand with the Indian company called Mahindra and Mahindra (manufacturer of jeeps and trucks).
- By placing orders: Sometimes MNCs just place orders with small producers around the world for the production of garments, footwear and sports items. After that, the products are supplied to the MNCs and sold under the brand name of the MNCs.



55. Analyse any five positive effects of globalization on the Indian economy.

**Ans :** (All India 2017)

The five positive effects of globalization on the Indian economy are:

- Producers: The big producers who join hands with the MNCs are getting the profit and expanded their business across the globe.
- Workers: MNCs helped in reducing the unemployment in India.
- Buyers: The buyers are getting variety of brands with quality at cheaper rates.
- The Indian producers are getting an opportunity to reach beyond the domestic market.
- The Indian producers got foreign investment and newer technologies from the MNCs.

56. What is liberalization? Describe any four effects of liberalization on the Indian economy. (All India 2017)

**Ans :**

Removing trade barriers set by the government is termed as liberalisation. If the country uses the policy of liberalisation then it means that it allows other countries to interact, which will lead to globalisation. The four effects of liberalisation on the Indian economy are:

- The MNCs of other countries started coming to India.
  - The Indian producers got an opportunity to reach beyond the domestic market.
  - The Indian producers got foreign investment and newer technologies from the MNCs.
  - The Indian buyers are getting variety of brands with quality at cheaper rates.
57. Define 'Globalisation'. Describe any four benefits of globalisation to the Indian economy.

**Ans :** (Foreign 2017)

Globalisation can be defined as the process of rapid interconnection or integration between the markets. The four benefits of globalization to the Indian economy are:

- Producers: The big producers who join hands with the MNCs are getting the profit and expanded their, business across the globe.
- Workers: MNCs helped in reducing the unemployment in India.
- Buyers: The buyers are getting variety of brands with quality at cheaper rates.
- The Indian producers are getting an opportunity to reach beyond the domestic market.
- The Indian producers got foreign investment and newer technologies from the MNCs.

58. Describe any three ways by which multinational companies are spreading their products across the world.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2017)

The following are the three ways in which multinational corporations are spreading their products in different ways

- Buying up the local companies: This is most common route for MNC investment and expanding production. MNCs can do so because

they have huge wealth. For example: Cargill foods an American MNC has bought Indian company named Parakh Food. Now the control on the large marketing network and the four oil refineries has shifted to the Cargill Food. Cargill Food has now become the largest producer of edible oil in India.

- Joining hand with local companies: Sometimes the MNCs join hands with the local companies and do the production. In this process, the local companies get twin benefits: a) they get foreign investment and b) MNCs provide newer technology to them for the production. For example: In 1995 Ford Motors an American company joining hand with the Indian company called Mahindra and Mahindra (manufacturer of jeeps and trucks).
- By placing orders: Sometimes MNCs just place orders with small producers around the world for the production of garments, footwear and sports items. After that, the products are supplied to the MNCs and sold under the brand name of the MNCs.

59. Describe the impact of globalisation on Indian economy with examples. (CBSE 2016)

**Ans :**

The impact of globalization on the Indian economy can be noticed both as positive and negative. These are:

Positive impact:

- Producers: The big producers who join hands with the MNCs are getting the profit and expanded their business across the globe.
- Workers: MNCs helped in reducing the unemployment in India.
- Buyers: The buyers are getting variety of brands with quality at cheaper rates.
- The Indian producers are getting an opportunity to reach beyond the domestic market.
- The Indian producers got foreign investment and newer technologies from the MNCs.

Negative impact:

- The local small producers are not able to compete with the MNCs and they have to shut down their business.
- Mostly MNCs produce goods and services for the rich people so the poor people are not able to enjoy the benefits of globalisation much.
- Due to the globalisation the MNCs don't hire the workers on permanent basis. They use flexibility in labour law policy.

60. Describe any five factors that promote the MNCs to set up their production units in a particular place. (CBSE 2016)

**Ans :**

The five factors that promote the MNCs to set up their production units in a particular place are:

- They set up their production units where there is easy availability of cheap and skilled labour.
- They look for the locations from the markets are close so that they will have to pay less transportation cost in supplying the final goods to the consumers.
- They set up their business in the countries where

the government policies are favourable for them. Such as in India the Indian government has given them the benefit of flexibility in labour laws.

- d. MNCs set up their units where they get easy availability of raw materials.
- e. They start their offices and get world class facilities like education, health and concession on tax.

**61.** Describe the major problems created by the globalisation for a large number of small producers and workers.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2016)

The major problems created by the globalisation for a large number of small producers and workers are:

Small producers: The local small producers are not able to compete with the MNCs and they have to shut down their business. It is mainly due to the following factors:

- a. Lack of newer technology.
- b. MNCs have huge wealth to influence the price and market condition.

Workers:

- a. Due to the globalisation the MNCs don't hire the workers on permanent basis.
- b. They use flexibility in labour law policy.

**62.** How are MNCs controlling and spreading their productions across the world? Explain.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2015)

The following are the three ways in which multinational corporations are controlling and spreading their production across the world:

- a. Buying up the local companies: This is most common route for MNC investment and expanding production. MNCs can do so because they have huge wealth. For example: Cargill Foods an American MNC has bought Indian company named Parakh Food, Now the control on the large marketing network and the four oil refineries has shifted to the Cargill Food. Cargill Food has now become the largest producer of edible oil in India.
- b. Joining hand with local companies: Sometimes the MNCs join hands with the local companies and do the production. In this process, the local companies get twin benefits: (i) they get foreign investment and (ii) MNCs provide newer technology to them for the production. For example: In 1995 Ford Motors an American company joining hand with the Indian company called Mahindra and Mahindra (manufacturer of jeeps and trucks).
- c. By placing orders: Sometimes MNCs just place orders with small producers around the world for the production of garments, footwear and sports items. After that, the products are supplied to the MNCs and sold under the brand name of the MNCs.

**63.** "Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all and also ensure that benefits of globalisation are shared better." Support the statement.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2015)

Yes, it is true to say that Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all and also ensure that

benefits of globalisation are shared better. /

- a. At present the globalisation is not free and fair. The developed countries are dominating over the developing countries. The MNCs have huge wealth and thus they influence the labour, price and market conditions.
- b. In practice it can be seen that developing countries follow the rules whereas the developed countries have not liberalized their trade policies.
- c. Also it is seen that the MNCs are producing goods mostly for the rich buyers. The workers are not getting permanent jobs due to the policies like flexibility in labour laws.
- d. MNCs have better technology and capital investment which makes them superior in the market and the other producers are out of the race.

**64.** Explain the role of MNCs in the globalisation process.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2014)

Globalisation can be defined as the process of rapid interconnection or integration between the markets. MNCs play a vital role in promoting globalisation process as:

- a. By producing goods and services at global level.
- b. Goods and services are sold at global level.
- c. Investments, technology and people are moving between countries.
- d. It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market.
- e. MNCs by the foreign trade connects/ integrates the markets in the world.

**65.** "Globalisation has been advantageous to both consumers as well as producers." Support the statement with suitable examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2014)

Yes, it is true to say that the Globalisation has been advantageous to both consumers as well as producers because: Consumers:

- a. They get different brands of the product.
- b. They get the goods and services at cheaper rate.
- c. They get better quality products.

Producers:

- a. The local producers joining hands with MNCs get a chance to expand their business.
- b. They get the newer technology from the MNCs.
- c. They get the investment done by MNCs in their companies.

For example: In 1995 Ford Motors an American company joined hand with the Indian company called Mahindra and Mahindra (manufacturer of jeeps and trucks).

**66.** How have our markets been transformed in recent years? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2013)

This is true to say that now there is wide ranging choice of goods are available in the Indian markets. It is possible due to the policy of liberalisation, privatisation and globalisation followed by India since 1991. Before 1990, we had limited brands and limited variety of products in the market but now the market is flooded with variety of brands. For example, earlier

we had just Ambassador and Fiat cars on the Indian roads but now we have so many brands from all over the world. The same happened in the field of TV, mobile phones, garments etc. ,

67. How has globalisation benefitted India? Explain with five examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2013)

The process of globalisation has benefitted India in the following ways:

Consumers:

- They get different brands of the product.
- They get the goods and services at cheaper rate.
- They get better quality products.

Producers:

- The local producers joining hands with MNCs get a chance to expand their business.
- They get the newer technology from the MNCs.
- They get the investment done by MNCs in their companies.

Workers:

- MNCs helped in reducing the unemployment in India.
- It provided job opportunities to the people, (c) It helped in improving the standard of living of the workers.

68. How is the government of India trying to attract more foreign investment? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2013)

The government of India trying to attract more foreign investment through the following ways:

- SEZ (Special Economic Zone): Governments are creating SEZs where they provide world class facilities for electricity, roads, water, transport, recreational and educational facilities. MNCs will not have to pay taxes for the initial period of five years if they set up their production units in the SEZs.
- Flexibility in Labour Laws: Governments has given the permission to the MNCs to hire the workers flexibly i.e., hiring the workers on temporary basis and also ignoring the labour laws. This will help the MNCs in reducing their labour cost and the total cost of production.

69. Explain any three ways by which MNCs exercise control on production.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2010)

The following are the three ways in which multinational corporations are spreading their products in different ways

- Buying up the Local Companies: This is most common route for MNC investment and expanding production. MNCs can do so because they have huge wealth. For example: Cargill Foods an American MNC has bought Indian company named Parakh Food. Now the control on the large marketing network and the four oil refineries has shifted to the Cargill Food. Cargill Food has now become the largest producer of edible oil in India.
- Joining hand with local companies: Sometimes the MNCs join hands with the local companies and do the production. In this process, the local companies get twin benefits: (t) they

get foreign investment and (ii) MNCs provide newer technology to them for the production. For example: In 1995 Ford Motors an American company joined hand with the Indian company called Mahindra and Mahindra (manufacturer of jeeps and trucks).

- By placing orders: Sometimes MNCs just place orders with small producers around the world for the production of garments, footwear and sports items. After that, the products are supplied to the MNCs and sold under the brand name of the MNCs,

70. How is foreign trade interconnecting the markets in different countries? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** (CBSE 2010)

Foreign trade means trade with other . countries. When we trade with other countries then we connect with the markets of different countries.

For example, Chinese toys in the Indian market. In this process the goods and services and produced and sold at global level. There is movement of technology and people between the countries. It gives opportunity to the local producers to reach beyond the domestic market. Buyers get different choice, price and quality.

An MNC from USA producing the industrial equipment is designing its product in the research centres of the US, its components are manufactured in China, the assembling and the export work is done from Mexico and Eastern Europe and its call centres are there is India.

WWW.CBSE.ONLINE

#### NO NEED TO PURCHASE ANY BOOKS

For session 2019-2020 free pdf will be available at [www.cbse.online](http://www.cbse.online) for

- Previous 15 Years Exams Chapter-wise Question Bank
- Previous Ten Years Exam Paper (Paper-wise).
- 20 Model Paper (All Solved).
- NCERT Solutions

All material will be solved and free pdf. It will be provided by 30 September and will be updated regularly.